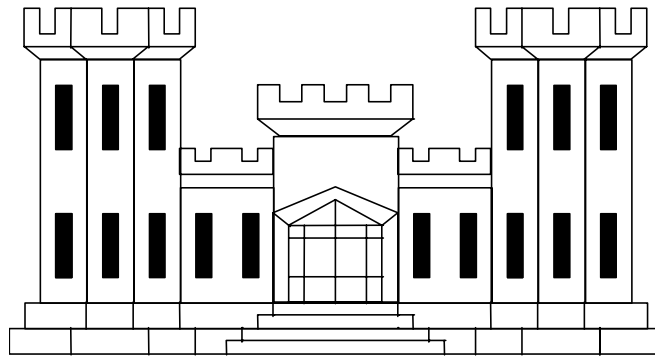


**HEADQUARTERS,  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP**



**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE  
ENGINEER PLATOON  
ENGINEER COMPANY  
ENGINEER BATTALION  
INFANTRY DIVISION (LT)**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited**



# MISSION TRAINING PLAN

## Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light).

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	i
<b>PREFACE</b> .....	iii
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training</b> .....	1-1
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes</b> .....	2-1
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix.....	2-1
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans</b> .....	3-1
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise</b> .....	4-1
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines</b> .....	5-1
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation</b> .....	6-1
<b>APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)</b> .....	90-1
<b>APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)</b> .....	91-1
<b>Glossary</b> .....	88-1
<b>Supporting References</b> .....	99-1
<b>QUESTIONNAIRE</b> .....	77-1

<sup>\*</sup>DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**DESTRUCTION NOTICE:**

This publication, along with ARTEP's 5-025-66, 5-026-34, 5-027-10, 5-155-66, 5-156-34, 5-157-35, 5-217-10, 5-217-35, 5-335-60, 5-335-65, 5-335-70, 5-425-66, 5-426-34, 5-427-10, 5-445-66, 5-446-34, 5-446-36, 5-447-10, 5-447-35 (2 Oct 00) and 5-027-35 (18 Oct 00), supersedes ARTEP 5-025-MTP (18 Oct 89).

**Authentication .....77-5**

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Active (AC) and Reserve Component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that the Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light), are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in the MTP. Standards for training may be more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and is part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to the Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light) table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05157L000.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ), United States (US) Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on Department of Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-6600.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.



## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

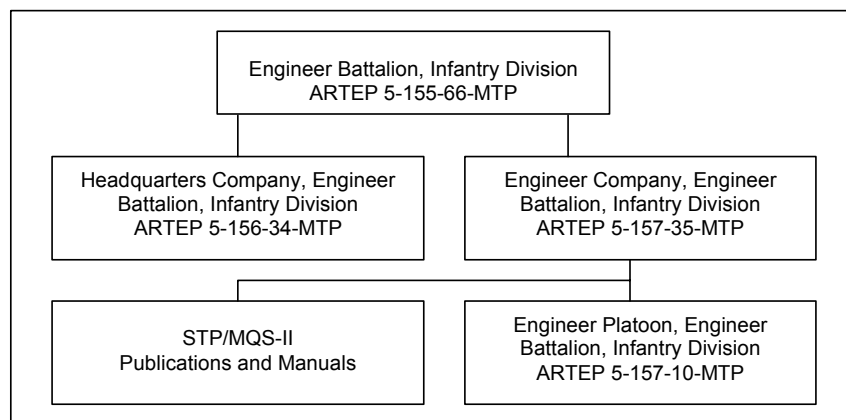
1-1. General. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors:

- a. Unit's mission-essential task list (METL).
- b. Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of:

- a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-157-35-MTP. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the platoon training program.
- b. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are United States (US) Army standards and may not be modified.
- c. Soldier's training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels.
- d. Military Qualification Standards (MQS)-II manual for company-grade officers.

Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of these supporting materials.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the missions-to-collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for planning, preparing, and executing an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Exercise Operation Order (OPORD), used in conjunction with the training exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Conversion Factors (United States [US] and Metric), shows how to convert metric and US measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) and an implied mission that this unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical mission is the focal mission for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit:

- Mobility
- Countermobility
- Survivability
- Fight as an Engineer

a. Tasks for this mission may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

c. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of this unit's missions.

d. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles found in Field Manual (FM) 25-100. For further information see Chapter 1 of this manual.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the



CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the types of training events and resources required to train to standard. CATS will be embedded in the SATS Version 4.1 and higher.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS will provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing the required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS Version 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks that can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit's training strategy are:

(1) Maneuver and collective training strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit. It provides an annual training plan and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FM publications.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL. CATS is discussed in Appendix A of this MTP.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for which he intends to develop training based on his METL and the guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute unit training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, command guidance. If they do not support the guidance, or if

they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There will never be time to train everything. You must focus on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for the best effect.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained. Once the list is approved, he schedules them on the unit's training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Informs the subordinate leaders of training requirements and oversees their training. Ensures that the standards are rigidly enforced.

#### 1-8. Force Protection (Safety).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns the responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help unit's protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in death, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain-of-command's responsibilities include--

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk-reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrates risk control in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assesses safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluates safety performance during after-action review(s) (AARs).

- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply consistently effective risk-management concepts and methods to operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

- (4) Individual soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and corrects the situation when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are--

- (1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.
- (2) Analyze hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix, Figure 1-2, is a tool for assessing hazards.
- (3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow up and an AAR. Develop the lessons learned.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
		A	B	C	D	E
<b>E F F E C T</b>	CATASTROPHIC	I	<b>EXTREMELY HIGH</b>	<b>HIGH</b>		<b>LOW</b>
	CRITICAL	II				
	MARGINAL	III	<b>MEDIUM</b>		<b>LOW</b>	
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV				
<u>Effect</u>						
Catastrophic		Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.				
Critical		Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.				
Marginal		Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage.				
Negligible		First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.				
<u>Probability</u>						
Frequent		Individual soldier/item.		Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Continuously experienced.		
Probable		Individual soldier/item		Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs frequently.		
Occasional		Individual soldier/item.		Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life.		
Remote		Individual soldier/item		Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.		
Improbable		Individual soldier/item		Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely.		
<u>Risk Levels</u>						
Extremely High		Loss of ability to accomplish mission.				
High		Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.				
Medium		Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.				
Low		Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.				

Figure 1-2. Risk-Assessment Matrix

e. **Fratricide.** It is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons with the intent to kill the enemy and/or destroy enemy equipment, which results in the unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management are the mechanisms with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are--

(1) **Direct-fire control-plan failures.** These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire-control plans.

(2) **Land-navigation failures.** These occur when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) **Combat-identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(4) **Inadequate control measures.** Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire-support control measures necessary to tie the control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) **Reporting failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) **Weapons errors.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit's leadership.

(2) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Oversupervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. **Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management

parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and/or historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes (Figure 1-3). The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes, quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low.

Environmental Area:					Rating:			
Unit Operations			Risk Impact					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems			5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems			5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area (AA) activities			5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment			5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment			5	4	3	2	1	0

**Environmental Risk-Assessment Worksheet**

Unit Operation Environmental Issues	Movement of Heavy Vehicles/ Systems	Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/ Systems	AA Activities	Field Maintenance of Equipment	Garrison Maintenance of Equipment	Risk Rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland pollution						
Overall rating						

**Overall Environmental Risk-Assessment Form**

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander

**Risk Categories**

**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk-Assessment Matrix**

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training-performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and are inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ two levels above the evaluated unit. (See Chapter 6, External Evaluation.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is not always feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.





**CHAPTER 2**

**Training Matrixes**

2-1. General. The training Matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b>
<b>Mission Title</b> • COUNTERMOBILITY
• FIGHT AS ENGINEERS • FIGHT AS INFANTRY • MOBILITY
• MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY • PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table.

2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the mission and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an asterisk in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>				
05-3-0401.05-R01A SUPPORT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION	X	X		X
05-3-0402.05-R01A CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION	X	X	X	X
05-3-0404 CONDUCT RIVER CROSSING SITE RECONNAISSANCE	X	X	X	X
05-3-0407 CONDUCT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE	X	X		X
05-3-0411.05-R01A CONDUCT OBSTACLE AND RESTRICTION RECONNAISSANCE	X	X	X	X
05-3-0412 CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X	X	X	X
05-3-0413 CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X	X	X	X
05-3-0415 SUPPORT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X	X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
71-2-0332.05-T01A MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>				
05-1-1200 FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	X	X	X	X
05-2-0908.05-R01A CONDUCT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-2-0911 DEFEND A CONVOY AGAINST A GROUND ATTACK	X	X	X	X
05-2-1200 REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY	X	X	X	X
05-2-1215 FIGHT AS INFANTRY	X	X	X	X
05-3-1220.05-R01A CONDUCT FIRE AND MANEUVER	X	X	X	X
05-3-1221 SUPPORT BY FIRE	X	X	X	X
05-3-1222 DISENGAGE (DISMOUNTED)	X	X	X	X
05-3-1223 DISENGAGE [MOUNTED]	X	X	X	X
05-3-1225 REACT TO AN AMBUSH	X	X	X	X
05-3-1226 ESTABLISH A HASTY POSITION	X	X	X	X
05-3-1232 SECURE A HALT	X	X	X	X
05-3-1233 CROSS A DANGER AREA (DISMOUNTED)	X	X	X	X
05-3-1237 MOVE THROUGH URBANIZED TERRAIN	X	X	X	X
05-3-1238 CLEAR A BUILDING	X	X	X	X
05-3-1240 CONDUCT A RAID	X	X	X	X
05-3-7122 REACT TO CONTACT	X	X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE	X	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES	X	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA)	X	X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A CONDUCT A CONVOY	X	X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A ESTABLISH UNIT DEFENSE	X	X		X
07-3-1123.05-T01A CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X	X	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A MOVE TACTICALLY	X	X	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A PREPARE PERSONNEL FOR DEPLOYMENT	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY	X	X	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A CONDUCT A THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	X	X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	X	X	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	X	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	X	X	X	X
05-2-0301 CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	X	X	X	X
05-3-0001 PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (PLATOON (PLT))	X	X	X	X
05-3-0004 BREACH OBSTACLES		X		X
05-3-0038 DISABLE THE LINES OF COMMUNICATION OR THE AIRFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-3-0112 EMLACE A TACTICAL MINEFIELD	X	X		X
05-3-0114 SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-0115	EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-3-0116	REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-3-0118	CONDUCT MINESWEEPING OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0119.05-R01A	EMPLACE A STANDARDIZED TACTICAL ROW MINEFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-3-0201	CREATE A CRATER OBSTACLE WITH EXPLOSIVES	X	X	X	X
05-3-0202	DISABLE A BRIDGE WITH EXPLOSIVES	X	X	X	X
05-3-0204	PREPARE PRECONSTRUCTED OBSTACLES	X	X	X	X
05-3-0210	DISABLE CRITICAL EQUIPMENT/MATERIAL	X	X	X	X
05-3-0303.05-R01A	CONSTRUCT WIRE OBSTACLES	X			
05-3-0304	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0305	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE PROTECTIVE POSITIONS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0306	CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH	X	X	X	X
05-3-0307	CONSTRUCT A LOG OBSTACLE	X	X	X	X
05-3-0311	CONSTRUCT PROTECTIVE EARTH WALLS AND BERMS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0312	CONSTRUCT BUNKERS AND SHELTERS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0314	PLAN/CONSTRUCT STRONGPOINTS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0603	PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS	X	X		X
05-3-0606	SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING	X	X	X	X
05-3-0609	OPERATE RIVER-CROSSING SITES	X	X	X	X
05-3-0701	CONSTRUCT AN EXPEDIENT LANDING ZONE FOR HELICOPTERS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0705	CONSTRUCT COMBAT ROADS/TRAILS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0710	ASSEMBLE AND INSTALL CULVERTS	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-0711	CLEAR/REPAIR EXISTING AIRFIELDS	X	X	X	X
05-3-0767	CLEAR OBSTACLES WITH ENGINEER EQUIPMENT	X	X	X	X
05-3-0785	PLACE AIRFIELD MATTING ON PREPARED SURFACES	X	X		X
05-3-0786	REPLACE DAMAGED AIRFIELD MATTING	X	X		X
05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY	X	X	X	X
05-3-0906	CONDUCT AIR-ASSAULT OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-3-1241	CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS IN MILITARY OPERATIONS ON URBANIZED TERRAIN (MOUT)	X	X	X	X
05-4-0105	IMPROVE A VEHICLE LANE THROUGH A MINEFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-4-0110	MARK A MINEFIELD	X	X	X	X
05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS	X			
05-4-0920	CONDUCT TARGET TURNOVER	X	X	X	X
05-5-0302	PREPARE CREW-SERVED WEAPONS FIGHTING POSITIONS	X	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	REACT TO UNEXPLODED ORDNANCE (UXO)	X	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	USE PASSIVE AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES	X	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED-ARMS AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	X	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-2-0051	COORDINATE FOR FOOD-SERVICE SUPPORT	X	X	X	X
05-2-1024	CONDUCT COMBAT REFUELING OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-2-1131	ESTABLISH UNIT MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-3-1021	CONDUCT RESUPPLY OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X

ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-1054	PLAN/DIRECT AERIAL LOGISTICS OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-5-1041	PERFORM BATTLE-DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR	X	X	X	X
08-2-0002.05-T01A	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS	X	X	X	X
08-2-0003.05-T01A	TREAT CASUALTIES	X	X	X	X
08-2-0316.05-T01A	TRANSPORT CASUALTIES (UNITS W/O MEDICAL PERS)	X	X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	PERFORM UNIT GRAVES REGISTRATION (GRREG) OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
11-5-0049.05-T01A	INSTALL A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT)	X	X	X	X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	OPERATE A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT)	X	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	PROVIDE A FIELD CABLE/WIRE SYSTEM	X	X	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs)	X	X	X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0026	REPORT ENGINEER INFORMATION	X	X	X	X
05-1-0029	DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN	X	X	X	X
05-2-0025	REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO)	X	X		X
05-2-1218	CONDUCT REPORT PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X
05-2-1219	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS	X	X	X	X
05-2-7008	PREPARE AN OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0002	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (PLATOONJ)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0003	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX (PLATOON [PLTJ])	X	X	X	X
05-3-0113	CONDUCT SELF-EXTRACTION FROM REMOTELY-DELIVERED MINES	X	X	X	X
05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-1239	PLAN AND CONTROL INDIRECT FIRE	X	X	X	X
08-2-0303.05-T01A	CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	INSTALL/OPERATE/ MAINTAIN A SINGLE CHANNEL, GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	X	X	X	X
12-2-0321.05-T01A	MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH	X	X	X	X
12-2-0338.05-T01A	MAINTAIN TROOP MORALE AND COMBAT CAPABILITY	X	X	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A	MAINTAIN PLATOON STRENGTH	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY	SURVIVABILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>			
05-3-0401.05-R01A	SUPPORT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION		X
05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION		X
05-3-0404	CONDUCT RIVER CROSSING SITE RECONNAISSANCE		X
05-3-0407	CONDUCT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE		X
05-3-0411.05-R01A	CONDUCT OBSTACLE AND RESTRICTION RECONNAISSANCE		X
05-3-0412	CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE		X
05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE		X
05-3-0415	SUPPORT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE		X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>			
05-1-1200	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	X	X
05-2-0908.05-R01A	CONDUCT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS	X	X
05-2-0911	DEFEND A CONVOY AGAINST A GROUND ATTACK	X	X
05-2-1200	REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY	X	X
05-2-1215	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	X	X
05-3-1220.05-R01A	CONDUCT FIRE AND MANEUVER		X
05-3-1221	SUPPORT BY FIRE		X
05-3-1222	DISENGAGE (DISMOUNTED)		
05-3-1223	DISENGAGE [MOUNTED]		
05-3-1225	REACT TO AN AMBUSH		
05-3-1226	ESTABLISH A HASTY POSITION		
05-3-1232	SECURE A HALT	X	X
05-3-1233	CROSS A DANGER AREA (DISMOUNTED)		



Collective Tasks		MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY	SURVIVABILITY
05-3-1237	MOVE THROUGH URBANIZED TERRAIN		
05-3-1238	CLEAR A BUILDING		
05-3-1240	CONDUCT A RAID		
05-3-7122	REACT TO CONTACT		X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A	PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA)	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	CONDUCT A CONVOY	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A	ESTABLISH UNIT DEFENSE		X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	MOVE TACTICALLY	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	PREPARE PERSONNEL FOR DEPLOYMENT	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>			
03-2-3008.05-T01A	CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A	CONDUCT A THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	X	X

Collective Tasks		MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY	SURVIVABILITY
03-3-C222.05-T01A	RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A	RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A	CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A	CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	X	X
05-2-0301	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	X	X
05-3-0001	PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (PLATOON [PLT])		X
05-3-0004	BREACH OBSTACLES		
05-3-0038	DISABLE THE LINES OF COMMUNICATION OR THE AIRFIELD		X
05-3-0112	EMPLACE A TACTICAL MINEFIELD		
05-3-0114	SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS		X
05-3-0115	EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD		
05-3-0116	REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD		
05-3-0118	CONDUCT MINESWEEPING OPERATIONS		X
05-3-0119.05-R01A	EMPLACE A STANDARDIZED TACTICAL ROW MINEFIELD		X
05-3-0201	CREATE A CRATER OBSTACLE WITH EXPLOSIVES		
05-3-0202	DISABLE A BRIDGE WITH EXPLOSIVES		
05-3-0204	PREPARE PRECONSTRUCTED OBSTACLES		
05-3-0210	DISABLE CRITICAL EQUIPMENT/MATERIAL	X	X
05-3-0303.05-R01A	CONSTRUCT WIRE OBSTACLES		X
05-3-0304	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS	X	X
05-3-0305	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE PROTECTIVE POSITIONS	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-3-0306	CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH		
05-3-0307	CONSTRUCT A LOG OBSTACLE		
05-3-0311	CONSTRUCT PROTECTIVE EARTH WALLS AND BERMS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0312	CONSTRUCT BUNKERS AND SHELTERS	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-0314	PLAN/CONSTRUCT STRONGPOINTS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0603	PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0606	SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING		<b>X</b>
05-3-0609	OPERATE RIVER-CROSSING SITES		<b>X</b>
05-3-0701	CONSTRUCT AN EXPEDIENT LANDING ZONE FOR HELICOPTERS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0705	CONSTRUCT COMBAT ROADS/TRAILS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0710	ASSEMBLE AND INSTALL CULVERTS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0711	CLEAR/REPAIR EXISTING AIRFIELDS		<b>X</b>
05-3-0767	CLEAR OBSTACLES WITH ENGINEER EQUIPMENT		<b>X</b>
05-3-0785	PLACE AIRFIELD MATTING ON PREPARED SURFACES		<b>X</b>
05-3-0786	REPLACE DAMAGED AIRFIELD MATTING		<b>X</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-0906	CONDUCT AIR-ASSAULT OPERATIONS		
05-3-1241	CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS IN MILITARY OPERATIONS ON URBANIZED TERRAIN (MOUT)		
05-4-0105	IMPROVE A VEHICLE LANE THROUGH A MINEFIELD		<b>X</b>
05-4-0110	MARK A MINEFIELD		
05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS		<b>X</b>
05-4-0920	CONDUCT TARGET TURNOVER		
05-5-0302	PREPARE CREW-SERVED WEAPONS FIGHTING POSITIONS	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
09-2-0337.05-T01A	REACT TO UNEXPLODED ORDNANCE (UXO)	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	USE PASSIVE AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED-ARMS AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>			
05-2-0051	COORDINATE FOR FOOD-SERVICE SUPPORT		X
05-2-1024	CONDUCT COMBAT REFUELING OPERATIONS	X	X
05-2-1131	ESTABLISH UNIT MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS		X
05-3-1021	CONDUCT RESUPPLY OPERATIONS		X
05-3-1054	PLAN/DIRECT AERIAL LOGISTICS OPERATIONS	X	X
05-5-1041	PERFORM BATTLE-DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR		
08-2-0002.05-T01A	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS		X
08-2-0003.05-T01A	TREAT CASUALTIES	X	X
08-2-0316.05-T01A	TRANSPORT CASUALTIES (UNITS W/O MEDICAL PERS)	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	PERFORM UNIT GRAVES REGISTRATION (GRREG) OPERATIONS		X
11-5-0049.05-T01A	INSTALL A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT)		X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	OPERATE A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT)	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	PROVIDE A FIELD CABLE/WIRE SYSTEM	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs)	X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>			
05-1-0026	REPORT ENGINEER INFORMATION	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-1-0029	DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN		
05-2-0025	REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO)		<b>X</b>
05-2-1218	CONDUCT REPORT PROCEDURES	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-1219	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS		
05-2-7008	PREPARE AN OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)		<b>X</b>
05-3-0002	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (PLATOON)		<b>X</b>
05-3-0003	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX (PLATOON [PLT])		<b>X</b>
05-3-0113	CONDUCT SELF-EXTRACTION FROM REMOTELY-DELIVERED MINES	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-1239	PLAN AND CONTROL INDIRECT FIRE		
08-2-0303.05-T01A	CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-5-1102.05-T01A	INSTALL/OPERATE/ MAINTAIN A SINGLE CHANNEL, GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A	MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH		<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A	MAINTAIN TROOP MORALE AND COMBAT CAPABILITY	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-3-0001.05-T01A	MAINTAIN PLATOON STRENGTH	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions.



## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, sample field training exercises (FTXs) and situational training exercises (STXs), and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit's ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Figures 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY
03-3-C201.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
05-3-0306	CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH
05-3-0307	CONSTRUCT A LOG OBSTACLE
05-3-0303.05-R01A	CONSTRUCT WIRE OBSTACLES
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE
10-2-0319.05-T01A	RECEIVE AIRDROP RESUPPLY
71-2-0326.05-T01A	PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

**Figure 3-1. Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C203.05-T01A	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C209.05-T01A	REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS
05-1-1200	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE
07-2-0414.05-T01A	ESTABLISH A COMPANY DEFENSIVE POSITION

**Figure 3-2. Fight as Engineers Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY
03-3-C208.05-T01A	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY-CONTAMINATED AREA
05-3-0114	SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS
05-3-0404	CONDUCT RIVER-CROSSING SITE RECONNAISSANCE
05-3-0609	OPERATE RIVER-CROSSING SITES
05-3-0603	PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS

05-3-0767	CLEAR OBSTACLES WITH ENGINEER EQUIPMENT
-----------	---

**Figure 3-3. Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C205.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE
03-3-C206.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK
05-3-0306	CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH
05-3-0304	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS
05-3-0305	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE PROTECTIVE POSITIONS
05-3-0312	CONSTRUCT BUNKERS AND SHELTERS

**Figure 3-4. Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C205.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE
03-3-C206.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE
07-2-0333.05-T01A	PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES
07-2-0414.05-T01A	ESTABLISH A COMPANY DEFENSIVE POSITION
05-2-1215	FIGHT AS INFANTRY
05-2-1200	REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY

**Figure 3-5. Fight as Infantry Mission Outline**



## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This mission training plan (MTP) contains a sample field training exercise (FTX). It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-2-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Situational Training Exercise (STX). STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX--

- a. Provides repetitive training of missions.
- b. Allows the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

### ENGINEER PLATOON STX 5-2-E0001 BREACHING OBSTACLES

1. Objective. This sample STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's operation (Breaching Obstacles).

2. Interface. This STX supports the company FTX's 5-2-E0001 requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training.

a. Individual training. This training should be based on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. Use the individual-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 12B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards then providing feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes common tasks tests and commander's evaluations.

b. Collective training. This training should be based on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission (as well as other missions) are in the mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 and in the attack operation outline in Chapter 3.

c. Leader training. This training should be based on the leader tasks required for the exercises as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by

one or all of the following methods. When material and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

- (1) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).
- (2) A map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)
- (3) Terrain-board or sand-table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war gaming or rehearsals. (Model the terrain board or the sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)
- (4) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land-navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions.
- (5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer (NCO) development program.
- (6) Training extension courses use audiovisual equipment to present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard.

d. Training tips and instructions. The following are training tips and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX:

- (1) Know the requirements for breaching obstacles, marking obstacles, and tactical movement.
- (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
- (3) Review the standards for the training and evaluation outline (T&EO) that supports this exercise.
- (4) Conduct this STX using one of the following options:
  - (a) With ammunition, without ammunition, or using live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.
  - (b) With or without the Multiple Integrated Laser-Equipment System (MILES). The MILES provides better feedback and should be used if it is available.
  - (c) Under all environmental conditions, both day and night and with or without nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC). These scenarios should involve an active NBC environment.
- (5) Ensure that this STX is initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (expect for planned after-action reviews [AARs]). During the "run" phase, the STX is executed under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat (including full operational security [OPSEC] and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and an aggressive opposing forces (OPFOR), NBC environment, and movement distance). This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(6) Ensure that the T&EO standards for this exercise (from Chapter 5) are met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(7) Conduct this exercise on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(8) Ensure that the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to portray threat activities realistically.

(9) Assign at least one evaluator to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR are in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(10) Ensure that OPFOR units look and fight like a potential enemy. This will help soldiers understand threat tactics, doctrine, and weapons systems.

e. Training enhancers. This STX requires the platoon to breach an obstacle, move tactically, support by fire, and mark an obstacle.

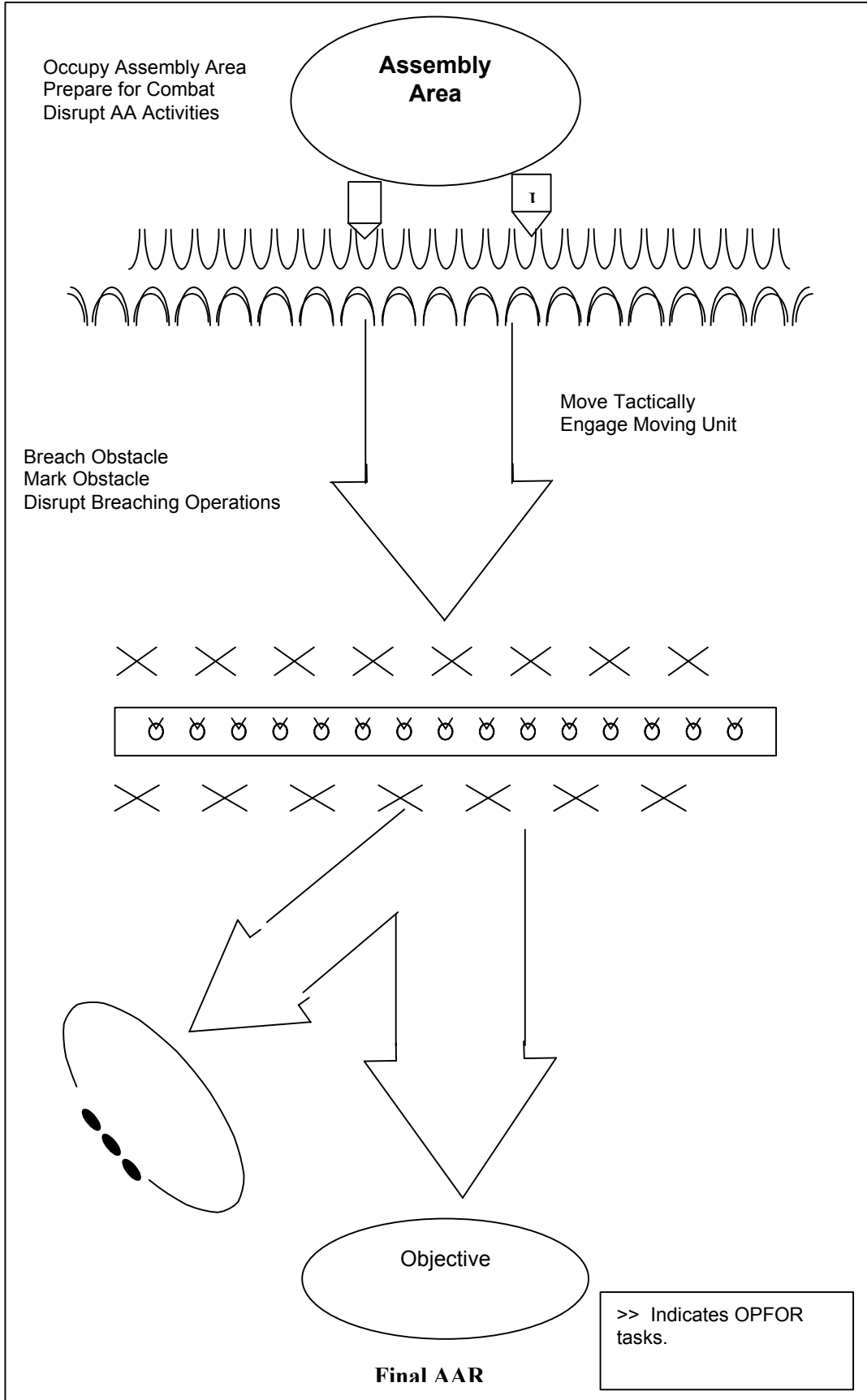
(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices (NVDs).

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) levels as proficiency increase.

#### 4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy obstacle has been established. Initial reports indicate that the obstacle is overwatched by a company-sized element. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and close air support (CAS). The enemy has used chemical weapons and will probably do so again. A breach of the obstacle has been ordered to allow maneuver forces to move through to attack the enemy. Figure 4-1 illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a company fragmentary order (FRAGO) by the platoon and ends after the obstacle is marked. An AAR should be held after completing the obstacle has been breached and marked. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Table 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and a recommended time for each portion of the STX.



**Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX**

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

Event	Action	Estimated Time
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	4 hours
2	Receive a FRAGO	15 minutes
3	Plan Breaching Operations	3 hours
4	Issue a FRAGO	2 hours
5	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
6	Conduct Precombat Operations	2 hours
7	Conduct Tactical Movement	1 hour
8	Breach the Obstacle	1 hour
9	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
10	Mark the Obstacle	1 hour
11	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<b>Total time:</b>		<b>17.25 hours</b>
<p>1. These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</p> <p>2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and the unit's training proficiency.</p> <p>3. Additional time may be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</p>		
<p><b>*Note: These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</b></p>		

5. Special Situation.

a. Your platoon is part of a company in a secure AA. The platoon receives a FRAGO to breach obstacles (see Figure 4-2).

b. The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is prepare to provide support for the breach and marking of the obstacle. The company commander orders your platoon to breach the obstacle.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers (Os/Cs). This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or the platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other O/C is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon supporting the breach operations. This platoon will need an additional trainer or O/C.

b. Vehicles/communications. Those organic to the platoon are needed for this exercise. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. OPFOR. The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

rw10**FRAGMENTARY ORDER**

1. SITUATION.
  - a. Enemy Forces. The enemy forces are at 60 to 70 percent strength. They are preparing to counterattack and are expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.
  - b. Friendly Force. (Element designation) attack (date/time group) to destroy the enemy force at Objective \_\_\_\_\_ to disrupt the enemy's counterattack.
2. Mission. (Element destination) is to provide breach support for (supported elements designation) to breach obstacles along the main avenue of approach.
3. Execution.
  - a. Concept of the Operations. (See overlay.)
    - (1) Intent. Breach obstacles and destroy the enemy preparing to counterattack.
    - (2) Fire Support. Priority of fire to (another) platoon.
  - b. (Another) Platoon.
    - (1) Provide breach support for (evaluated) platoon.
    - (2) Prepare to replace (evaluated) platoon in case they become combat ineffective.
  - c. (Evaluated) Platoon.
    - (1) Provide local support by fire (initially).
    - (2) Breach obstacles.
    - (3) Mark obstacles according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP).
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Company RP is (grid).
    - (2) Company linkup point is (grid).

**Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 5-2-E0001**

d. Maneuver area. A 15- by 4-kilometer training area is desired. This area should provide for infiltration, cross-county movement, locations for supply sites, and a complex obstacle. The terrain should offer multiple, covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a "geographical" or "school solution" does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select and conceal positions.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-2-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>CLASS IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.</b>			

f. Regulations and requirements. Commanders should consult local regulations and range-control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.



7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-2-E0001**

<b>Task</b>	<b>Number</b>
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	05-3-1018.05-R01A
CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY	03-2-3008.05-T01A
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C208.05-T01A
SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS	05-3-0114
REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY	05-2-1200
FIGHT AS INFANTRY	05-2-1215

8. Operation Order (OPORD). Figure 4-3 shows a sample OPORD using the outline provided in Chapter 4.

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond, then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone.

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.

2. MISSION. 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.

(1) Maneuver. 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two task forces (TFs), with one TF following as the brigade's reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate, and fix his main body so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy him. It is necessary to destroy his combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.

(2) Fire Support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.

(3) Mines, Obstacles, and Fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles shown on obstacles overlay.

b. Subunit missions, as required.

c. Engineer. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD**

- (1) Report all enemy contact.
  - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
  - (3) Report the crossing of phase lines
  - (4) Additional information as required.
4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per division SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI).
    - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact with enemy.

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD (continued)**



## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. General. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the mission training plan (MTP) and the collective training of the unit. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific Battlefield Operating System (BOS).

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.
- b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.
- c. References. They are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.
- d. Iteration. This is used to identify the number of times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.
- e. Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess their proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
  - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
  - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
  - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Task conditions. The conditions describe the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- g. Task standards.
  - (1) The task standards state the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and be understood by every soldier.
  - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) conditions. The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

h. Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual task and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon’s performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting individual tasks. This is a list of all supporting individual tasks that are required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

l. Opposing forces (OPFOR) tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task or a group of tasks such as an STX or an FTX. Refer to Figure 5-1.

**Develop Intelligence**

SUPPORT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION (05-3-0401.05-R01A)..... 5-6  
 CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION (05-3-0402.05-R01A)..... 5-10  
 CONDUCT RIVER CROSSING SITE RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0404)..... 5-14  
 CONDUCT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0407)..... 5-17  
 CONDUCT OBSTACLE AND RESTRICTION RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0411.05-R01A) ..... 5-21  
 CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0412)..... 5-25  
 CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0413)..... 5-29  
 SUPPORT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0415)..... 5-33  
 PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT (19-3-3105.05-T01A)..... 5-37  
 MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)..... 5-39

**Deploy/Conduct Maneuver**

FIGHT AS ENGINEERS (05-1-1200)..... 5-42  
 CONDUCT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS (05-2-0908.05-R01A)..... 5-48  
 DEFEND A CONVOY AGAINST A GROUND ATTACK (05-2-0911) ..... 5-52  
 REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY (05-2-1200) ..... 5-56  
 FIGHT AS INFANTRY (05-2-1215) ..... 5-58  
 CONDUCT FIRE AND MANEUVER (05-3-1220.05-R01A) ..... 5-64  
 SUPPORT BY FIRE (05-3-1221)..... 5-67

DISENGAGE (DISMOUNTED) (05-3-1222)	5-70
DISENGAGE [MOUNTED] (05-3-1223)	5-74
REACT TO AN AMBUSH (05-3-1225)	5-77
ESTABLISH A HASTY POSITION (05-3-1226)	5-80
SECURE A HALT (05-3-1232)	5-82
CROSS A DANGER AREA (DISMOUNTED) (05-3-1233)	5-84
MOVE THROUGH URBANIZED TERRAIN (05-3-1237)	5-87
CLEAR A BUILDING (05-3-1238)	5-90
CONDUCT A RAID (05-3-1240)	5-94
REACT TO CONTACT (05-3-7122)	5-100
REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE (07-1-1923.05-T01A)	5-103
PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES (07-2-0333.05-T01A)	5-105
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)	5-109
CONDUCT A CONVOY (07-2-1301.05-T01A)	5-112
ESTABLISH UNIT DEFENSE (07-3-0219.05-T01A)	5-116
CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH (07-3-1123.05-T01A)	5-120
DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-3-4129.05-T01A)	5-124
MOVE TACTICALLY (07-3-C211.05-T01A)	5-127
PREPARE PERSONNEL FOR DEPLOYMENT (12-1-0409.05-T01A)	5-130

### Protect the Force

CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY (03-2-3008.05-T01A)	5-132
CONDUCT A THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS (03-2-C312.05-T01A)	5-134
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS (03-3-C201.05-T01A)	5-140
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK (03-3-C202.05-T01A)	5-144
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK (03-3-C203.05-T01A)	5-146
PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE (03-3-C205.05-T01A)	5-149
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C206.05-T01A)	5-151
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (03-3-C208.05-T01A)	5-153
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS (03-3-C209.05-T01A)	5-155
RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C222.05-T01A)	5-157
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C223.05-T01A)	5-159
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION (03-3-C224.05-T01A)	5-162
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (03-3-C226.05-T01A)	5-168
CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (05-2-0301)	5-171
PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (PLATOON [PLT]) (05-3-0001)	5-174
BREACH OBSTACLES (05-3-0004)	5-177
DISABLE THE LINES OF COMMUNICATION OR THE AIRFIELD (05-3-0038)	5-180
EMPLACE A TACTICAL MINEFIELD (05-3-0112)	5-184
SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS (05-3-0114)	5-190
EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0115)	5-194
REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0116)	5-199
CONDUCT MINESWEEPING OPERATIONS (05-3-0118)	5-203
EMPLACE A STANDARDIZED TACTICAL ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0119.05-R01A)	5-207
CREATE A CRATER OBSTACLE WITH EXPLOSIVES (05-3-0201)	5-214
DISABLE A BRIDGE WITH EXPLOSIVES (05-3-0202)	5-219
PREPARE PRECONSTRUCTED OBSTACLES (05-3-0204)	5-222
DISABLE CRITICAL EQUIPMENT/MATERIAL (05-3-0210)	5-225
CONSTRUCT WIRE OBSTACLES (05-3-0303.05-R01A)	5-228
CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS (05-3-0304)	5-232
CONSTRUCT VEHICLE PROTECTIVE POSITIONS (05-3-0305)	5-236
CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH (05-3-0306)	5-241
CONSTRUCT A LOG OBSTACLE (05-3-0307)	5-246

CONSTRUCT PROTECTIVE EARTH WALLS AND BERMS (05-3-0311)	5-249
CONSTRUCT BUNKERS AND SHELTERS (05-3-0312)	5-255
PLAN/CONSTRUCT STRONGPOINTS (05-3-0314)	5-260
PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS (05-3-0603)	5-264
SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING (05-3-0606)	5-267
OPERATE RIVER-CROSSING SITES (05-3-0609)	5-272
CONSTRUCT AN EXPEDIENT LANDING ZONE FOR HELICOPTERS (05-3-0701)	5-275
CONSTRUCT COMBAT ROADS/TRAILS (05-3-0705)	5-278
ASSEMBLE AND INSTALL CULVERTS (05-3-0710)	5-284
CLEAR/REPAIR EXISTING AIRFIELDS (05-3-0711)	5-289
CLEAR OBSTACLES WITH ENGINEER EQUIPMENT (05-3-0767)	5-297
PLACE AIRFIELD MATTING ON PREPARED SURFACES (05-3-0785)	5-303
REPLACE DAMAGED AIRFIELD MATTING (05-3-0786)	5-307
ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY (05-3-0904.05-R01A)	5-310
CONDUCT AIR-ASSAULT OPERATIONS (05-3-0906)	5-315
CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS IN MILITARY OPERATIONS ON URBANIZED TERRAIN (MOUT) (05-3-1241)	5-318
IMPROVE A VEHICLE LANE THROUGH A MINEFIELD (05-4-0105)	5-324
MARK A MINEFIELD (05-4-0110)	5-327
CREATE AN ABATIS (05-4-0205)	5-330
CONDUCT TARGET TURNOVER (05-4-0920)	5-335
PREPARE CREW-SERVED WEAPONS FIGHTING POSITIONS (05-5-0302)	5-339
REACT TO UNEXPLODED ORDNANCE (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)	5-343
USE PASSIVE AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES (44-1-C220.05-T01A)	5-345
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED-ARMS AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS (44-1-C221.05-T01A)	5-347
PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (71-2-0326.05-T01A)	5-350
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
COORDINATE FOR FOOD-SERVICE SUPPORT (05-2-0051)	5-352
CONDUCT COMBAT REFUELING OPERATIONS (05-2-1024)	5-356
ESTABLISH UNIT MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (05-2-1131)	5-358
CONDUCT RESUPPLY OPERATIONS (05-3-1021)	5-361
PLAN/DIRECT AERIAL LOGISTICS OPERATIONS (05-3-1054)	5-365
PERFORM BATTLE-DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (05-5-1041)	5-369
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS (08-2-0002.05-T01A)	5-373
TREAT CASUALTIES (08-2-0003.05-T01A)	5-375
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES (UNITS W/O MEDICAL PERS) (08-2-0316.05-T01A)	5-379
PERFORM UNIT GRAVES REGISTRATION (GRREG) OPERATIONS (10-2-0318.05-T01A)	5-383
INSTALL A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT) (11-5-0049.05-T01A)	5-386
OPERATE A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)	5-388
PROVIDE A FIELD CABLE/WIRE SYSTEM (11-5-0121.05-T01A)	5-390
HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)	5-393
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
REPORT ENGINEER INFORMATION (05-1-0026)	5-395
DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN (05-1-0029)	5-398
REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO) (05-2-0025)	5-400
CONDUCT REPORT PROCEDURES (05-2-1218)	5-402
CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS (05-2-1219)	5-406
PREPARE AN OPERATION ORDER (OPORD) (05-2-7008)	5-413
PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (PLATOON)] (05-3-0002)	5-415
PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX (PLATOON [PLT]) (05-3-0003)	5-419
CONDUCT SELF-EXTRACTION FROM REMOTELY-DELIVERED MINES (05-3-0113)	5-422
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES (05-3-1018.05-R01A)	5-426
PLAN AND CONTROL INDIRECT FIRE (05-3-1239)	5-432



CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION (08-2-0303.05-T01A) ..... 5-434

ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET (11-3-0214.05-T01A) ..... 5-436

INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE CHANNEL, GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET (11-5-1102.05-T01A) ..... 5-438

MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH (12-2-0321.05-T01A)..... 5-442

MAINTAIN TROOP MORALE AND COMBAT CAPABILITY (12-2-0338.05-T01A)..... 5-444

MAINTAIN PLATOON STRENGTH (12-3-0001.05-T01A)..... 5-447

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** SUPPORT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION (05-3-0401.05-R01A)

(FM 5-170)

(FM 5-34)

(FM 7-7J)

(FM 7-8)

(STP 21-1-SMCT)

(STP 21-24-SMCT)

(STP 5-12B1-SM)

(STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to support a route reconnaissance over a specified route. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles, obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate within plus 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included the routing to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) Included the method of reconnaissance as hasty or deliberate.</li> <li>(3) Included the reconnaissance objectives; for example, the obstacle location, the trafficability, and the water points.</li> <li>(4) Included the radio communications for the progress report, the assistance, and the communications check.</li> <li>(5) Included the actions that the security team and the element members took upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Included the time and distance factors.</li> <li>(7) Included the noise and light discipline.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Planned for a double-flow of tracked vehicles (unless otherwise directed by the commander).</li> <li>c. Conducted troop leading procedures.</li> <li>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that the required Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R were available.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepared an overlay of the specified route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay, and showed the limit of sector symbols as one each at the start and end points.</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow.</li> <li>c. Prepared the title block with the following information:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route-classification formula.</li> <li>(2) The name, the rank, and the social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification.</li> <li>(3) The unit conducting the classification.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) The date-time group (DTG).                      (5) The map name, edition, and scale.                      (6) Any of the remarks that were necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay.                      NOTE: Reference Field Manual (FM) 5-170 for more detailed information</p> <p>3. The element reconnoitered the specific route by measuring and recording information along the route.</p> <p>a. Determined the travel-way width for trafficability.                      NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6 to 8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic.</p> <p>b. Determined the route type (x, y, or z).                      NOTE: X = all-weather route, Y = limited all-weather route, Z = fair-weather route.</p> <p>c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load class of any section of the route.</p> <p>d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC.</p> <p>e. Recorded the terrain features along the route on the overlay; for example, the fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constriction, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearance.</p> <p>f. Identified any critical point (terrain feature or obstacle) on the route to use for a detailed explanation on DA Form 1711-R. See FM 5-170.</p> <p>g. Recorded all measurements in meters on DA Form 1711-R.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader reviewed the overlay and filled out the required form(s) upon completing the reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Completed the overlay with all appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the route classification formula was present and located over the title block.</p> <p>c. Filled out the form(s) as required by the commander.</p> <p>d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters.</p> <p>* 5. The Operations and Training Officer (S3), intelligence officer (S2), or task force (TF) engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP) determines the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader--</p> <p>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms.</p> <p>b. Provided the required overlays.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	STP 21-24-SMCT	071-720-0015
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
	052-196-3030	PREPARE A ROAD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3031	PREPARE A TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3032	PREPARE A FORD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3033	PREPARE A BRIDGE RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS
	052-196-4016	DETERMINE THE MILITARY LOAD CLASSIFICATION (MLC) OF A MASONRY ARCH BRIDGE
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
	052-196-3030	PREPARE A ROAD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3031	PREPARE A TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3032	PREPARE A FORD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3033	PREPARE A BRIDGE RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	05-3-0402.05-R01A	CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

### **TASK: DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A ROUTE CLASSIFICATION (05-3-0402.05-R01A)

(FM 5-170)

(FM 5-34)

(FM 7-7J)

(FM 7-8)

(STP 21-1-SMCT)

(STP 21-24-SMCT)

(STP 5-12B1-SM)

(STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a route reconnaissance over a specified route. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles, obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader received a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or task force (TF) engineer for ground-security forces or aviation-security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. The reconnaissance met the commander's intent and requirements; for example, the route classification, double-flow traffic, obstructions, barriers, and bypasses.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares an overlay of the specified route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols (one each at the start and end points).</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or a magnetic north arrow.</li> <li>c. Prepared the title block with the following information:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route-classification formula.</li> <li>(2) The name, rank, and social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification.</li> <li>(3) The unit conducting the classification.</li> <li>(4) The date-time group (DTG).</li> <li>(5) The map name, edition, and scale.</li> <li>(6) Any of the remarks necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Reference Field Manual (FM) 5-170 for more detailed information</p> <p>* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Used the five-paragraph order format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included the route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) Included the method of reconnaissance which was either the hasty method or the deliberate method.</li> <li>(3) Included the reconnaissance objectives; for example, the obstacle location, trafficability, and water points.</li> <li>(4) Included radio communications for the progress report, requests for assistance, and communications check.</li> <li>(5) Included the actions that the security team and the squad members took upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Included the time and the distance factors.</li> <li>(7) Included the noise and the light discipline.</li> </ul> <p>b. Planned for a double flow of tracked vehicles unless otherwise directed by the commander.</p> <p>c. Conducted troop leading procedures.</p> <p>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>e. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that the required Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R were available.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element reconnoiters the specific route, measuring, and recording information along the route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the travel-way width for trafficability.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6-to-8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the route type (X, Y, or Z).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: X = all-weather, Y = limited all-weather, Z = fair-weather route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load classification of any section of the route.</li> <li>d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC.</li> <li>e. Recorded on the overlay the terrain features that were seen along the route; for example, the fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constriction, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearance.</li> <li>f. Identified, for detailed explanation on DA Form 1711-R, any of the critical points spotted on the route; for example, terrain features or obstacles. See FM 5-170.</li> <li>g. Recorded all the measurements in meters and on DA Form 1711-R.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader with the entire reconnaissance team is debriefed by the S3, S2, or TF engineer and turns over the required reconnaissance forms and overlays completed. The unit TACSOP or SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed the overlay with all the appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the route classification formula was present and located over the title block.</li> <li>c. Filled out the form(s) as required by the commander.</li> <li>d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The element leader briefed the commander, S2, S3, or TF engineer on the reconnaissance mission and then submitted the overlay, reports, and DA Form(s) 1711-R to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms to the commander with the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> <li>b. Provided required overlays to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	01-2250.10-1001	Provide Engineer Support to Task Forces
	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES
	052-198-2007	CLASSIFY VEHICLES USING EXPEDIENT METHODS
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE
	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS
	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	071-329-1002
071-329-1012		ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK: DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT RIVER CROSSING SITE RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0404)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-170)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a river reconnaissance. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that have a specific requirement and can support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus 10 percent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader plans the river reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance of the river.</li> <li>b. Selected the routes for movement to and from the river.</li> <li>c. Selected the rally points (RPs).</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The element leader issues the OPORD to the elements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned elements' responsibilities and designated the far- and near-shore reconnaissance elements.</li> <li>b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the river.</li> <li>c. Described what actions should be taken in the event of any enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the river.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element dismounted before arriving at the river as required by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the element displaced tactically.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element leader observes and records the access-route conditions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the overhead obstructions having a clearance of less than 4.3 meters.</li> <li>b. Included the reductions in the travel-way width below 18 meters.</li> <li>c. Included the gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater.</li> <li>d. Included the curves having a radius of 25.15 meters or less.</li> <li>e. Included the conditions of road surfaces.</li> <li>f. Included the obstacles that existed; for example, the road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The far-shore reconnaissance element conducts a reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of various points that were identified during the map reconnaissance to include the--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights.</li> <li>(2) Bank slopes.</li> <li>(3) Boil conditions.</li> <li>(4) Bank obstacles which were natural or man-made.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Estimated the gap width at the river.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Determined the wet gap conditions in the vicinity of the river crossing to include the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) River depth at 3.05-meter intervals along the river.</li> <li>(2) Sandbars or other water obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Bottom conditions.</li> <li>(4) River-current fluctuations.</li> </ul> <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the RP designated by the element leader.</p> <p>6. The near-bank element conducts a reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See Subtask 5a.</li> <li>b. Estimated the wet gap at the river.</li> <li>c. Measured the current velocity at the river.</li> <li>d. Collected any other information requested in the element leader's orders.</li> <li>e. Returned to the designated RP.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all required information was obtained.</li> <li>b. Disseminated all information to element members.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader directs movement from the river.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element displaced tactically.</li> <li>b. Directed movement to subsequent rivers as required by the OPORD. Repeated Subtasks 2-7 until the mission was completed.</li> <li>c. Directed the return to the element assembly area (AA).</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The element leader submits the report to the platoon leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a sketch of each river to include the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights and slopes.</li> <li>(2) River-bottom profile.</li> <li>(3) River-width estimate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Provided other information to include the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Current velocity.</li> <li>(2) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(3) Route conditions leading to and from the river.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL
		PLANNING
	052-196-3151	Conduct river reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-196-3152	Prepare river recon report
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES
	052-196-2004	Determine stream velocity
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES
	052-196-2004	Determine stream velocity
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0407)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct an engineer reconnaissance for possible assets and obstructions along a proposed movement route. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element identifies engineer resources in the designated area. The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay, all required reports, and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1711-R. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader received a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an engineer reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or task-force (TF) engineer for ground-security forces or aviation-security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. The area or the target for the reconnaissance met the commanders intent and requirements; for example, materials, equipment, bivouac, terrain, barriers, and errors or omissions on the map.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepared an overlay of the designated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drew routes to scale on the overlay, showed the limit of sector symbols, and terrain features (bridges, water, and such).</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow.</li> <li>c. Prepared a title block. As a minimum, included a name, a social security number (SSN), a unit, a map sheet, a series, a scale, and any remarks such as security classification placed at the top and bottom and downgrade information.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format.                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included the area to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) Included the method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate.</li> <li>(3) Included the objectives of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>(4) Included the time and distance factors.</li> <li>(5) Included the noise and light discipline.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). d. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance.  4. The reconnaissance team reconnoitered the designated area and provided detailed information. a. Provided information about the special features and structures of the area, such as the bivouac, equipment, materials, water points, terrain, construction sites, and obstacles and barriers to movement. The information included any errors or omissions on the map. a. Reconnoitered the designated area. b. Provided information about the geographical locations utilizing the critical-point symbol with engineer-resource symbols.  * 5. The element leader reviews the overlay and fills out DA Form 1711-R. a. Checked the overlay for completeness (critical points and engineer-resource symbols). b. Ensured that DA Form 1711-R was completed for all engineer resources identified by a critical symbol. c. Recorded all measurements in meters. d. Signed DA Form(s) 1711-R.  6. The element leader briefs the commander on the reconnaissance mission and submits the overlay, reports, and DA Form 1711-R to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD. a. Submitted the completed DA Form(s) 1711-R. b. Submitted the completed overlay and reports.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	052-196-3035	PREPARE AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-196-3035	PREPARE AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK: DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.



**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT OBSTACLE AND RESTRICTION RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0411.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 3-34.230)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance of a suspected or reported enemy obstacle location. The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element identified and reported all enemy obstacle information critical to the tactical operation. The obstruction locations were identified using 8-digit grid coordinates and were accurate to 20 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities were within plus or minus 10 percent. The enemy forces did not detect the element. The reconnaissance was completed within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance. The element leader is directed by the unit leader to gather information based on the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), an intelligence report, or a tasking in the intelligence collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered known information about the obstacle from the IPB, the engineer-battlefield assessment (EBA), or previous reports, such as maps and graphics.</li> <li>b. Obtained the location of the named area of interest (NAI) or reconnaissance route from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>c. Received a not later than report time from the unit leader.</li> <li>d. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. The information included the--                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) Method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate.</li> <li>(3) Reconnaissance objectives, such as the obstacle location, the trafficability, and the water points.</li> <li>(4) Radio communications for the progress report, any requested assistance, and the communications check.</li> <li>(5) Actions that the security team and the element members took upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(7) Noise and the light discipline.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element moves tactically to a covered and concealed position in overwatch and has visual contact with the obstacle or NAI.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered information on the obstacle to include the--                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Location.</li> <li>(2) Orientation and depth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Conditions of the soil to determine the ability to use mechanical reduction assets on a minefield.</p> <p>(4) Presence, location, and type of wire.</p> <p>(5) Gaps and bypasses.</p> <p>(6) Composition of the minefield; for example, the buried or surface-laid antitank (AT) and antipersonnel (AP) mines, antihandling devices (AHDs), and mine depth.</p> <p>(7) Mine type.</p> <p>(8) Location of enemy direct-fire weapons.</p> <p>(9) Location of enemy indirect-fire systems capable of firing into the reduction area.</p> <p>(10) Composition of complex obstacles.</p> <p>(11) Gaps between successive obstacle belts.</p> <p>NOTE: Physical contact with the obstacle is not required; however, dismounted movement to the obstacle is required to obtain some information. The vehicle remains covered and concealed during the dismounted movement.</p> <p>3. The element gathers information on the obstacle.</p> <p>a. Included the location.</p> <p>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms.</p> <p>b. Provided the required overlays.</p> <p>b. Included the orientation and the depth.</p> <p>c. Included the condition of the soil, in the case of a minefield, to determine the ability to use the mechanical reduction assets.</p> <p>d. Included the presence, location, and type of wire.</p> <p>e. Included the gaps and bypasses.</p> <p>f. Included the composition of the minefield; for example, the buried or surface-laid AT and AP mines, AHDs, and mine depth.</p> <p>g. Included the type of mines.</p> <p>h. Included the location of enemy direct-fire weapons.</p> <p>i. Included the location of enemy indirect-fire systems which could have been fired into the reduction area.</p> <p>j. Included the composition of complex obstacles.</p> <p>k. Included the gaps between successive obstacle belts.</p> <p>4. The element organizes the information in the obstacle-report format according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). (See FM 20-32, for an example of an obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report format.)</p> <p>5. The element leader, with the entire reconnaissance team, is debriefed by the commander, the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task-force (TF) engineer, and then turns over the required completed reconnaissance forms and the overlays. The unit TACSOP or the standing operating procedure (SOP) will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-1127	PREPARE AN AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1128	LOCATE MINES WITH THE AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
	052-192-3034	DIRECT A DELIBERATE MINEFIELD RECONNAISSANCE PATROL
	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-3153	Prepare OBSTINTEL report
	052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0412)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)  
 (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a technical reconnaissance to locate obstructions along a proposed movement route. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The reconnaissance team conducts a technical reconnaissance to verify the technical data along the main supply route (MSR). All of the forms contain the required information. There are no time restraints, unless otherwise specified in the FRAGO or an OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a technical reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for ground-security force or aviation-security force.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy-situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>e. The area or the target for the reconnaissance met the commander's intent and requirements.</li> <li>f. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format.</li> <li>g. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>h. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>i. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</li> </ul> 2. The reconnaissance team starts movement on the technical reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved along the specified route.</li> <li>b. Maintained communications with the higher commander.</li> </ul> 3. The reconnaissance team conducts a bridge-classification reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered the required information to complete Department of the Army (DA) Form 1249.</li> <li>b. Completed DA Form 1249 with the required information according to field manual (FM) 5-170.</li> </ul> 4. The reconnaissance team conducts a ferry reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1252.</li> <li>b. Completed DA Form 1252 with the required information according to FM 5-170.</li> </ul> 5. The reconnaissance team conducts a ford reconnaissance.		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1251. b. Completed DA Form 1251 with the required information according to FM 5-170.  6. The reconnaissance team conducts road reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1248. b. Completed DA Form 1248 with the required information according to FM 5-170.  7. The reconnaissance team conducts a tunnel reconnaissance or an underpass reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1250. b. Completed the DA Form 1250 with the required information according to FM 5-170.  NOTE: Not all types of reconnaissance may be applicable to the commander's intent or requirements.  8. The reconnaissance team starts movement to the assembly area (AA).  * 9. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit's SOP or the TACSOP determines the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader-- a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES
	052-196-2101	DETERMINE PERCENT OF SLOPES
	052-196-2103	DETERMINE GAP WIDTH
	052-196-3030	PREPARE A ROAD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3031	PREPARE A TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3032	PREPARE A FORD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3033	PREPARE A BRIDGE RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-3035	PREPARE AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK: DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**TASK: DISRUPT ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0022)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.



**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0413)

(FM 5-170)  
(FM 7-7)

(FM 5-34)  
(FM 7-7J)

(FM 5-100)  
(FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operations order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical reconnaissance for the purpose of gathering essential data and intelligence in the new area of operations (AO). The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. The element will be in continuous tactical operations during daylight and darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task-force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepares the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The reconnaissance teams verify and accurately report the intelligence requirements (IR) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the S3, the S2, or the TF engineer. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the S3 or the TF engineer for the ground-security force or the aviation-security force.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy-situation brief from the S2.</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area, the route, or the zone reconnaissance (observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach [OCOKA]).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included whether the format was mounted or dismounted.</li> <li>(2) Included the objectives of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>(3) Included the time and distance factors.</li> <li>(4) Included the noise and light discipline.</li> <li>(5) Included the methods of communication.</li> <li>(6) Included the action of the security team upon enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted troop leading procedures.</li> <li>c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>d. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170 for additional reconnaissance techniques.</p> <p>3. The reconnaissance team supports the area reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered all the terrain.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Inspected and classified all the bridges.                      c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all of the bridges.                      d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.                      e. Located the obstacles.                      f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.                      g. Located and reported all enemy forces.                      h. Provided the current and the projected enemy situation.</p> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170 for more detailed information.</p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team supports a zone reconnaissance and provides critical information.                      a. Reconnoitered all the key terrain.                      b. Inspected and classified all the key bridges.                      c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges.                      d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.                      e. Located obstacles in the zone determining--                          (1) How to reduce the obstacles (assets and time.)                      f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.                      g. Reported any sightings of enemy forces.</p> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170 for more detailed information.</p> <p>5. The reconnaissance team supports the route reconnaissance and provides critical information.                      a. Determined the route's trafficability.                      b. Reconnoitered the limit of direct-fire range and the terrain dominating the route.                      c. Reconnoitered all built-up areas.                          (1) Identified the bypass routes.                          (2) Identified the construction supplies and equipment.                          (3) Identified the ambush sites.                          (4) Identified any evidence of booby traps.                          (5) Identified the suitable sites for command and control facilities and combat service support (CSS) facilities.                      d. Reconnoitered all the lateral routes to the limit of direct-fire range.                      e. Inspected and classified all the bridges.                      f. Located the fords or crossing sites near all bridges.                          (1) Determined the fordability and located nearby bypasses to support the combat and CSS units.                          (2) Marked the bridge classifications.                          (3) Marked the bypass route.                      g. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.                      h. Reconnoitered all the defiles.                      i. Located the obstacles.                      j. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.                      k. Reported the route information.                      l. Located and reported all the enemy forces that could influence movement along the route.</p> <p>* 6. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit TACSOP or the SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader--                      a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Provided the required overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** SUPPORT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-3-0415)

(FM 5-170)  
(FM 7-7)

(FM 5-34)  
(FM 7-7J)

(FM 5-100)  
(FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and an operation order (OPORD) to perform an area route or zone tactical reconnaissance in order to gather essential data and intelligence in a new area of operations (AO). The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. The element will be in continuous tactical operations during daylight or darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Operations and Training Officer (S3), the Intelligence Officer (S2), or the task-force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepares the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. Reconnaissance teams verify and accurately report the intelligence requirements (IR) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the Commander, the S3, the S2, or the TF Engineer. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to support a tactical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. The information included the--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reconnaissance techniques (mounted or dismounted).</li> <li>(2) Objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>(3) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(4) Noise and light discipline.</li> <li>(5) Method of communication.</li> <li>(6) Action of the security team upon contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>d. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170, Chapter 3 for more techniques of reconnaissance.</p> <p>2. The reconnaissance team supports an area reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the information about all the terrain within the area.</li> <li>b. Inspected and classified all the bridges within the area.</li> <li>c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all the bridges within the area.</li> <li>d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>e. Located any of the obstacles in the area.</li> <li>f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>g. Found and reported all the enemy forces within the area.</li> <li>h. Provided the current and the projected enemy situation in the reconnaissance area.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170, Chapter 3 for more detailed information.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The reconnaissance team supports a zone reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered all the key terrain within the zone.</li> <li>b. Inspected and classified all the key bridges within the zone.</li> <li>c. Located the suitable fords or the crossing sites near all bridges within the zone.</li> <li>d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, the underpasses, and the culverts.</li> <li>e. Located obstacles in the zone, determining how to reduce the obstacles (assets and time).</li> <li>f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>g. Reported any enemy forces in the zone.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Reference FM 5-170 for more detailed information.</p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team supports a route reconnaissance and provides any critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Routed trafficability.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the limit of direct-fire range and the terrain that dominated the route.</li> <li>c. Reconnoitered all the built-up areas along the route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the bypass routes.</li> <li>(2) Identified the construction supplies and equipment.</li> <li>(3) Identified the ambush sites.</li> <li>(4) Identified any evidence of booby traps.</li> <li>(5) Identified the suitable sites for the command, control, and combat service support (CSS) facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Reconnoitered all lateral routes to the limit of the direct-fire range.</li> <li>e. Inspected and classified all the bridges on the route.</li> <li>f. Located the fords or crossing sites near all the bridges on the route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the fordability and located nearby bypasses that could support the combat and the CSS units.</li> <li>(2) Marked the bridge classifications.</li> <li>(3) Marked the bypass route.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>h. Reconnoitered all the defiles along the route.</li> <li>i. Located the obstacles along the route.</li> <li>j. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>k. Reported the route information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Found and reported all the enemy forces that could influence movement along the route.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>5. The element leader with the entire reconnaissance team is debriefed by the S3, the S2, or the TF engineer and turns over the required reconnaissance forms and completed overlays. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP) will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms.</li> <li>b. Provided the required overlays.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1960.10-1001	Direct Engineer Reconnaissance Missions
	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4006	PLAN RECONNAISSANCE SUPPORT DIGITALLY
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON	

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	05-3-0413	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 19-40) (STP 19-95B1-SM)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy's equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, radios, and so forth.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag, if the items were taken from the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ul>		
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of the equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ul>		
* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 19-30)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ electronic warfare (EW) measures and air- and ground-reconnaissance units. It can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising its main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leaders check or perform information-security measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited the fraternization with civilians, as applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> 2. The platoon performs camouflage discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> 3. The platoon camouflages the individual's positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages the equipment to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit's position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were properly erected.</li> <li>d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> <li>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</li> <li>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage, as needed.</li> <li>h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The platoon employs communications security (COMSEC), and the company's net control station (NCS) enforces COMSEC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced the procedures in the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. The platoon ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</li> <li>b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</li> <li>c. Followed the COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</li> <li>d. Followed the procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</li> <li>f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon employs physical-security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Employed the counter-reconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Followed the stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</li> <li>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</li> <li>f. Used the challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limited the access into the unit's area.</li> <li>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>i. Picked up the litter.</li> <li>j. Employed the air guards.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The platoon leader, and all leaders, enforces noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE
	071-325-4426	RECOVER AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** FIGHT AS ENGINEERS (05-1-1200)  
 (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** According to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit's fire-support officer (FSO). 2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air-defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit. 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status. If required, requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength. 4. If necessary, the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish assigned missions. 5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air-defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements.</li> <li>b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions.</li> <li>c. Designated the company's assembly areas (AAs).</li> </ul> 6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo hauling assets to support the line companies' new needs.</li> <li>b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary.</li> <li>d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion's control in the field trains.</li> <li>e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position.</li> <li>(2) Located the equipment park on defensible terrain.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1910.10-1001	Direct the Construction of Survivability Positions
	01-1980.10-1001	Conduct Engineer Support for River-Crossing Operations
	01-2250.20-1005	Evaluate Engineer Intelligence for Dissemination
	01-2250.20-1006	Provide Input to Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
	01-2250.20-1008	Advise the Commander on the Use of Terrain for Combat Operations
	01-2260.20-1001	Direct Engineer Actions in Support of Nation Assistance Projects
	01-5030.00-1007	Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment
	01-5030.00-1008	React to Chemical or Biological Hazard
	01-5030.00-1009	React to Nuclear Hazard
	01-5700.01-0001	Communicate on a Tactical Radio
	01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers
	01-5704.00-0001	Place a Radio Set, AN/PRC-77 into Operation
	01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation
	031-503-1004	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/ CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1005	MAINTAIN YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1008	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/ CONTAMINATION WHILE ELIMINATING BODYWASTE WHEN WEARING MOPP4
	031-503-1011	MAINTAIN YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-503-1019	REACT TO CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL HAZARD/ATTACK
	031-503-1020	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1026	MAINTAIN YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1033	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN USING THE M291 SKIN DECONTAMINATING KIT (SDK)
	031-503-1034	DECONTAMINATE YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING THE M295 INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION KIT (IEDK)
	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS
	031-503-2012	SUPERVISE THE FITTING OF PROTECTIVE MASKS
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING (ENTERING OR EXITING) A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	031-507-3003	SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION
	04-3305.01-0001	Maintain an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
	04-3305.01-0002	Operate an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
	04-3305.01-0005	Engage targets with an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
	04-3305.01-0006	Employ M18A1 Claymore
	04-3305.01-0007	Employ Hand Grenades
	04-3305.01-0008	Engage Targets with M72A2
	04-3305.01-0009	Operate M60 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0010	Engage Targets with an M60 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0011	Prepare a Range Card for an M60 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0014	Fight with a Bayonet
	04-3306.01-0001	Control Movement Techniques
	04-3306.01-0002	Move Under Direct Fire
	04-3306.01-0004	React to Flares
	04-3306.01-0005	React to Indirect Fire
	04-3306.01-0006	Use Challenge and Password
	04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
	04-3306.01-0008	Analyze Terrain
	04-3306.01-0009	Estimate Range
	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3015	Administer a Nerve Agent Antidote to Self (Self-Aid)
	04-8310.00-3016	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
	04-8310.00-3017	Protect Yourself Against Cold
	04-8310.00-3018	Give First Aid for Frostbite
	04-8310.00-3019	Protect Yourself Against Heat
	04-8310.00-3020	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
	04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
	04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
	04-9103.01-0023	Develop a Survival Plan
	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY-AREA ACTIVITIES (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's assembly-area (AA) activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS (05-2-0908.05-R01A)  
 (FM 71-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the unit's main body and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader organizes the quartering party. The unit leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit's SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the unit's SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures.                  NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined-arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal (for additional information, see Field Manual [FM] 101-5).</p> <p>* 3. The quartering-party leader conducts a map reconnaissance, identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.                  NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the unit's main body, as long as the security was maintained along the route. If security was not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy. The quartering party--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Loaded the vehicles according to the load plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Prepared the troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags.</p> <p>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</p> <p>* 5. The quartering-party leader briefs the convoy personnel. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</p> <p>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</p> <p>c. Briefed the prescribed rate of march, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>e. Briefed the limited-visibility movement procedures.</p> <p>f. Briefed the chain of command and the radio frequency.</p> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</p> <p>b. Reported the route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher commander.</p> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Reported the position of the enemy forces.</p> <p>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</p> <p>c. Evaluated the terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The quartering-party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</p> <p>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated Subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</p> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Secured the area.</p> <p>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</p> <p>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</p> <p>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>e. Marked the vehicle positions.</p> <p>10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to that element's sector of the AA (mounted, if possible).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21- 9	01-1910.10-1001	Direct the Construction of Survivability Positions
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY-AREA ACTIVITIES (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's assembly-area (AA) activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** DISRUPT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0017)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting quartering-party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt quartering-party operations and infiltrate the enemy's AA.

1. Locates the quartering party and the AA.
2. Surprises the main body.
3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes.
4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage.
5. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DEFEND A CONVOY AGAINST A GROUND ATTACK (05-2-0911)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 71-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A convoy's main body is attacked by a squad- to platoon-size force. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage due to inadequate immediate-action measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The convoy commander prepares for combat operations. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with the security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the move. Ensured that the convoy had 360-degree coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army ) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received a digital update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p>2. The convoy prepares for combat operations. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. Air guards were present.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all procedures.</li> </ul> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at the identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered the vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy. Moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the convoy commander.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The convoy commander develops the situation. The convoy commander-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy's strength, composition, and disposition. The convoy commander evaluated the direction and the volume of the enemy fire, the confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander selects a course of action based on the mission, area, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy's flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The convoy commander reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>8. The unit reorganizes and resumes its convoy. The unit--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconstituted the security force.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Reported casualties.</li> <li>d. Redistributed the ammunition and equipment.</li> <li>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21I 9	01-2230.10-1001	Supervise the Maintenance of Engineer Equipment
	01-2240.20-1001	Coordinate Engineer-Unique Support Logistic Requirements
MOS O 21B 9	01-2250.20-1006	Provide Input to Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
No STP and No MOS	052-195-3113	Supervise construction of a checkpoint
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	191-379-4450	SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL
	301-337-6001	PROCESS CAPTURED MATERIEL
	441-091-3001	DIRECT UNIT AIR DEFENSE
	551-721-3352	DIRECT CONVOY DEFENSE OPERATIONS
	551-721-4326	PERFORM DUTIES AS CONVOY COMMANDER
STP 21-24-SMCT	061-283-1002	LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
	113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
STP 21-II-MQS	03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
	03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition
	03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List
STP 21-I-MQS	03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
	03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition
	03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
	071-326-5605	CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
	071-326-5605	CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** SURRENDER TO CAPTURING UNIT ON THE BATTLEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers and documents and equipment sensitive to OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal/destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REORGANIZE AS INFANTRY (05-2-1200)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is conducting continuous tactical operations. The battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as infantry. A time schedule is provided. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order and conducted troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while the subordinate units prepared for the infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary-order (FRAGO) or an operation-order (OPORD) format.</li> <li>(3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and the time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire-support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them within the combat element, and determined their missions. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat-service-support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>d. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the-- (1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.  * 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.  * 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1361	CAMOUFLAGE YOURSELF AND YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** FIGHT AS INFANTRY (05-2-1215)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company organizes the platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to the higher headquarter's directives.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued the warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with his leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for and incorporate them into the upcoming mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The company commander utilizes fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations.</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or in written form.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The key terrain.</li> <li>b. The enemy's avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. The location of the company's BP, the company's target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area.</li> <li>d. The limits of the company's BP and the company or team's sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets.</li> <li>f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire, on TRPs and engagement area, at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> <li>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. The covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>h. The covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</li> <li>i. The locations for the observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon's sector of fire.</li> <li>j. The location of the existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ul> <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at a halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the company's OPs.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point, using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines simultaneously.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions which were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> <li>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and the sketches of the platoon fire plans to make sure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies.</li> <li>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to make sure that the engagement area was set on the enemy's avenue of approach, covered by mutually-supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage.</li> <li>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually-supporting interlocking fire covering the engagement area.</li> <li>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders reference established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF. The reports were submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD.</li> <li>g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</li> </ul>		
<p>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and, based on the factors of the METT-TC, plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force's method of attacking a built-up area.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the BP to identify the--               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Location of the checkpoints, the phase lines, and the building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) Observation sites and the fields of fire on the enemy's avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) Positions which would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Location of OPs which provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and BPs which could not be blocked by blow down from structures.</li> <li>(7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges.</li> <li>(8) Structures which dominate the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Coordinated with the adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that the units were tied in with the company's or team's forces.</li> <li>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</li> <li>e. Planned for indirect fire in the engagement area and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind the obstacles. Smoke was planned by the fire-support team (FIST).</li> </ul> <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</li> <li>b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team.</li> <li>c. Developed a fire plan which included the company's or team's sector, the platoon and OP's positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the platoon's fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team's fire plan for the XO and the platoon leaders (as time permitted).</li> <li>e. Verified, based on METT-TC, the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions.</li> <li>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Check the complete direct and indirect fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</p> <p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the engagement area. The company or team commander and platoon leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the engagement area (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The enemy's avenue of approach.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) The locations of the existing and reinforcing obstacles.</p> <p>(3) The key terrain.</p> <p>(4) The TRPs.</p> <p>(5) The artillery preplots.</p> <p>b. Organized the engagement area to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment.</p> <p>c. Organized fire in the engagement area, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on the METT-TC. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged.</p> <p>d. Used fire to interlock. The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire.</p> <p>e. Positioned the company or team around the engagement area. One company or platoon was centered in the engagement areas and one was positioned on both the right and the left flank.</p> <p>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible.</p> <p>g. Shifted the platoons or the firing positions to cover the dead space and the weak points.</p> <p>h. Developed an obstacle plan that--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features.</li> <li>(2) Slowed the enemy movement.</li> <li>(3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Included mine-fighting positions that the enemy could have used to his advantage or destroyed.</li> <li>(5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy's main avenue(s) of approach.</li> <li>(6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them.</li> <li>(7) Placed obstacles in the engagement area so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned the personnel stopped in front of the obstacles.</li> </ol> <p>*14. The company or team commander is briefed, by the platoon leaders, on the engagement area(s) in each sector and any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission. The company or team commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using the METT-TC to determine the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Size of the enemy force.</li> <li>(2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team's position.</li> <li>(3) Direction of enemy movement.</li> <li>(4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company or team's sector or the battalion TF's engagement area.</li> <li>(5) Enemy's arrival time at the company or team's trigger point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all of the information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.</li> <li>d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of the smoke dust columns or the sounds.</li> <li>e. Ordered the company or team and the platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.</li> <li>f. Received SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders.</li> <li>g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.</li> <li>h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Ordered the platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</li> </ul> <p>*16. If the enemy elements are too strong, the company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested final protective fire (FPF), if scheduled.</li> <li>b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If no guidance was given by the battalion TF, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so they are not flanked by the enemy.</p> <p>17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.</li> <li>b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</li> </ul> <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with the platoon leaders reference continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the size, the type, and the location of the enemy elements.</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of the enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements.</li> </ul> <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or the left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.</li> <li>b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy's flank or rear (for counterattack by fire).</li> <li>c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or the rear position of the enemy's trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed the light vehicles and the dismounted infantry. (3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front.  25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission.  *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher headquarters according to the field SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1361	CAMOUFLAGE YOURSELF AND YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT FIRE AND MANEUVER (05-3-1220.05-R01A)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy squad is occupying hasty-fighting positions at the platoon front. The platoon is directed to attack the enemy position. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon is not surprised or fixed by the enemy. The platoon destroys (at least 30 percent of the enemy is killed or captured) or forces the withdrawal of squad size or smaller elements. The platoon sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when it is conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader designates a movement element consisting of one to three dismount teams and a base-of-fire element consisting of vehicles (if available) or a dismount team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a movement element consisting of one to three dismount teams and a base-of-fire element consisting of vehicles (if available) or a dismount team. The--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Squad leaders moved the vehicles, if available, into overwatch positions.</li> <li>(2) Dismount teams moved into firing positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Designated a direction of fire for the base-of-fire element and the signal to lift or shift fires.</li> <li>c. Selected a covered and concealed route toward the enemy flank.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader initiates movement to the assault position.</li> <li>3. The base-of-fire element (under the platoon sergeant's control) delivered continuous, well-aimed fire with enough volume to suppress the enemy.</li> <li>4. The movement element (under the platoon leader's control) moved to the last covered and concealed position before the assault.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered movement by using smoke, if available.</li> <li>b. Moved without masking the base-of-fire element's suppressive fires.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The movement element prepares for the final assault.</li> <li>* 6. The platoon leader signals to lift or shift suppressive fires.</li> <li>* 7. The base-of-fire elements lift or shift fires as directed (left, right, or beyond the objective to other known enemy positions).</li> <li>8. The dismount team, led by the platoon leader, conducts the final assault.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used smoke, if available, to conceal the assault.</li> <li>b. Assaulted aggressively, delivering a heavy volume of sustained and accurate fire on the objective.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Took advantage of cover and concealment, using 3- to 5-second rushes to move across the objective. d. Sought to penetrate enemy defenses in a narrow sector. e. Fought through the objective and overcame the remaining defenses or resistance from the flanks or rear. f. Cleared and secured the objective.  9. The base-of-fire element moves to the objective by the quickest means possible on order of the platoon leader.  10. The platoon leader consolidates and reorganizes. a. Reported the platoon status to the unit commander. b. Reestablished the chain of command. c. Designated personnel to perform critical functions. (1) Redistributed ammunition. (2) Requested needed supplies. (3) Treated and evacuated casualties. (4) Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points when the situation permitted. (5) Collected enemy information and material and reported according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012 052-195-4065	Operate an M249 Machine Gun CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-218-3003 071-326-5605 071-326-5605	Conduct digital troop leader procedures CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** SUPPORT BY FIRE (05-3-1221)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is supporting another element by fire during a movement or assault, or the platoon has been assigned a battle position with an engagement area and control measures. The primary direction of fire and tentative support position have been designated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the overwatched element and suppresses. The platoon causes no casualties to the assault element. The platoon decisively engages at least 50 percent of the enemy element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon moves (mounted or dismounted) to firing positions by using the best covered and concealed route.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader ensures that suppressive fires can be placed on enemy positions from the selected firing position.</li> <li>* 3. The squads/dismount teams dismount and take up positions.</li> <li>4. The squad leaders move the vehicles into a good position to cover the dismounted teams. If good positions are not available, dismounts weapons.</li> <li>5. The platoon leader assigns primary sectors of fire to the vehicle teams, squads, and dismounted teams and ensures that these assigned sectors do not block the moving element's route.</li> <li>6. The squad leaders position M60s, squad automatic weapons (SAWs), AT4s, and personnel to cover the assigned sectors of fire.</li> <li>7. The platoon, on signal, places a heavy volume of fire on the objective, then signals by whistling, verbal, hand and arm, or pyrotechnic.</li> <li>8. The platoon leader selects targets and controls the distribution of fires, concentrating on identified weapon positions (giving priority to automatic weapons and antiarmor weapons).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated only M60/SAW gunners to fire in automatic mode.</li> <li>b. Distributed fires evenly over the objective if individual enemy positions could not be identified.</li> <li>c. Reduced the volume of fire when enemy fires became ineffective.</li> <li>d. Increased the volume of the platoon's fire when the movement element neared the objective, keeping the enemy down.</li> </ol> </li> <li>9. On the platoon leader's signal or when the assault begins, the platoon lifts fires. The unit remains prepared to engage any threat to the movement element, shifts fires to another target, or walks its fires across the objective in front of the movement element.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. The movement element is on the objective and, on order, the platoon ceases fire and moves to the objective by the quickest means possible.  11. The platoon leader consolidates and reorganizes the platoon. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the platoon's status to the unit commander.</li> <li>b. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>c. Designated personnel to perform critical functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Redistributed ammunition.</li> <li>(2) Reported supply status.</li> <li>(3) Treated and evacuated casualties</li> <li>(4) Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points according to the unit commander's directive.</li> <li>(5) Collected enemy information, material, and reported to the unit commander.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-326-0501	MOVE AS A MEMBER OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE	



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DISENGAGE (DISMOUNTED) (05-3-1222)  
(FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving dismounted and receives enemy fire, or the platoon is occupying untenable defensive positions. The platoon leader orders the platoon to disengage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves to a position where the enemy cannot observe or place direct fire on it. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon breaks contact while moving dismounted.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader directs the platoon to break contact by giving a direction and a distance to move using the "clock method" (for example, 9 o'clock, 300 meters).</li> <li>3. The platoon members move to the last designated rally point using the withdrawal methods listed in task step 2, if factors prohibit the platoon leader from giving specific instructions.</li> <li>* 4. The platoon members select routes providing cover and concealment using the low crawl, high crawl, and rush techniques of movement.</li> <li>5. The platoon leader submits a spot report (SPOTREP) to the unit commander.</li> <li>6. The platoon leader accounts for personnel and reorganizes the platoon at the rally point.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the platoon status to the unit commander.</li> <li>b. Designated personnel to perform critical functions.</li> <li>c. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>d. Redistributed ammunition.</li> <li>e. Reported supply status.</li> <li>f. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points when the situation permitted.</li> <li>h. Collected and reported enemy information and material.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon continues the mission as specified in the operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>* 8. The platoon prepares to disengage while in a defensive position before enemy contact.</li> <li>9. The platoon leader plans the disengagement/withdrawal based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a point providing the vehicle teams with good observation, fields of fire, and cover and concealment for the dismount element to remount.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that each platoon member knew the withdrawal signal by conducting rehearsals and briefing the platoon.</p> <p>c. Designated covered and concealed routes to the remount point. Time and situation permitting, the platoon leader ensured that the platoon members knew the route by having each walk the route.</p> <p>10. The platoon prepares for disengagement by performing the following tasks:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Redistributed ammunition.</li> <li>Conducted personnel and equipment inspections.</li> <li>Repositioned key weapons.</li> <li>Conducted rehearsals if time permitted.</li> </ol> <p>11. The platoon conducts a withdrawal.</p> <p>12. The platoon leader gives the signal for and indicates the method of withdrawal based on enemy pressure.</p> <p>13. The platoon disengages by thinning of lines when enemy pressure is close and heavy and the platoon's vehicles cannot overwatch the dismount element.</p> <p>14. The squad leaders designate selected personnel to disengage and move to the rear and assume overwatch positions. The remaining personnel--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increased the rate of fire to keep the enemy from overrunning the position.</li> <li>Withdrew when the group in the overwatch positions provided suppressive fire.</li> <li>Moved the M60s and squad automatic weapons (SAWs) where they provided the best fire support (FS) for movement when bounding rearward.</li> </ol> <p>15. The leaders remain on line and move with the last element to withdraw to maintain maximum control.</p> <p>16. The platoon's personnel continue this method of fire and movement to the rear until they link up with the platoon's vehicles.</p> <p>17. The rifle teams disengage when enemy pressure decreases. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire.</p> <p>18. The link-up vehicles deliver a high volume of well-aimed fire with automatic weapons and overwatch the withdrawal of the dismount element.</p> <p>19. The second rifle team moves to the rear to take up an overwatch position.</p> <p>20. The teams repeat this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the dismount element and platoon vehicles can linkup.</p> <p>21. The dismount element and platoon vehicles link up at the remount point.</p> <p>22. The rifle teams mount the vehicles.</p> <p>23. The link-up vehicles move from the area by covered and concealed routes, keeping at least one terrain feature between the vehicle and the enemy.</p> <p>24. The platoon continues to withdraw until enemy contact is broken.</p> <p>25. The platoon leader submits a size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) report to the unit commander and reorganizes the platoon.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS          STP 21-1-SMCT	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-326-0501	MOVE AS A MEMBER OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage-of-lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DISENGAGE [MOUNTED] (05-3-1223)  
(FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving mounted and receives enemy fire or the platoon is occupying untenable defensive positions. The platoon is ordered to disengage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves to where the enemy cannot observe or place direct fire on it. The platoon sustains less than 20 percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. If the platoon leader determines other units can provide support by fire, he orders the platoon to conduct a simultaneous disengagement, designating when and where the platoon vehicles simultaneously disengage.</p> <p>* 2. The Bradley engineer squad vehicles provide firepower and armor protection. A Grizzly MK-19 is deployed as a reaction and area-cover fire weapon. The vehicle gunners deliver a high volume of suppressive fire, to include the use of smoke. All mounted weapons remain pointed in the direction of the enemy.</p> <p>3. The vehicles are moved to a designated remount point or a new firing position to give the squad personnel enough fire cover to disengage if the squad members are dismounted. Once loaded, the vehicles begin their disengagement.</p> <p>4. The platoon leader orders the platoon to disengage by vehicle or pairs of vehicles if the platoon must provide its own covering fire.</p> <p>5. The leader designates which Bradley engineer fighting vehicles provides a base of fire and which vehicles moves to initiate disengagement.</p> <p>6. The Bradley engineer fighting vehicles provide firepower and armor protection. A Grizzly MK-19 is deployed as a reaction and area-cover fire weapon. The vehicle gunners deliver a high volume of suppressive fire, including smoke. All mounted weapons remain pointed in the direction of the enemy.</p> <p>7. The element who initially broke contact (using covered and concealed routes) arrives at the next position and provides a base of fire to cover the rear movement of the forward base of the fire element.</p> <p>8. The platoon leader designates a remount point in the rear for dismounted personnel if the squad members are deployed.</p> <p>9. The platoon repeats this bounding procedure until all contact is broken.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.



**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REACT TO AN AMBUSH (05-3-1225)  
(FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving either dismounted or mounted when the enemy initiates an ambush. Part of the platoon is in the kill zone. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element in the kill zone disengages or the platoon forces the enemy to withdraw. Near ambush: Within 3 seconds (13 seconds, mounted), personnel in the kill zone assume prone positions, return fire, and throw concussion or fragmentation, and smoke grenades. Within 3 seconds, personnel not in the kill zone locate and place suppressive fire on the enemy and shift fire as the assault begins. Far ambush: Within 3 seconds (13 seconds for disabled vehicles), personnel in the kill zone assume prone positions and immediately return fire. Within 3 more seconds, personnel locate and engage the enemy with well-aimed fire. Within 5 seconds, vehicles move out of the kill zone or assume covered positions in the kill zone. Within 3 seconds, personnel not in the kill zone begin fire and movement to destroy the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The dismounted platoon reacts to a near ambush (within hand-grenade range). Personnel in the kill zone-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Carried out immediately one of two actions without orders or signals. If cover was not available, assumed the prone position, returned fire, and threw fragmentation and smoke grenades. If cover was available, immediately sought the nearest covered position, returned fire, and threw fragmentation and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Returned fire and assaulted the ambush position upon explosion of the fragmentation grenades or when the supporting element suppressed enemy fire.</li> <li>c. Placed the heaviest possible volume of suppressive fire against the ambush position.</li> <li>d. Deployed the Grizzly as a reaction and area-cover fire weapon. The Bradley engineer squad vehicles provided firepower and armor protection.</li> </ul>		
2. The dismounted platoon reacts to a far ambush (out of hand-grenade range). Personnel in the kill zone immediately carry out the following actions without orders or signals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed a prone position and returned fire.</li> <li>b. Sought the best available position to continue well-aimed fire at the ambush position.</li> </ul>		
3. The platoon reacts to an ambush while mounted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles out of the kill zone or took a covered and concealed position within the kill zone.</li> <li>b. Dismounted disabled vehicles in the kill zone to provide a base of fire.</li> <li>c. Conducted fire and movement with vehicles and personnel not in the kill zone.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Placed the highest possible volume of suppressive fire against the ambush position with personnel in the kill zone.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader evaluates the situation and determines a course of action (COA) (either to attack or disengage).</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <p>1. The platoon leader may elect to attack before the platoon reaches its objective depending upon the enemy's strength, capabilities, and disposition or if time is critical and the mission warrants the added risk.</p> <p>2. The platoon leader may elect to disengage if the unit is outnumbered by the enemy. The platoon can disengage to prepare for counterattack, withdraw, or continue the mission.</p> <p>5. The platoon leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) to include enemy contact and casualty information.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
	071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** ESTABLISH A HASTY POSITION (05-3-1226)  
(FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered by the company commander to halt for an indefinite period. The platoon leader orders the platoon to establish hasty fighting positions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes local security and tenable defensive positions which provides early warning and protection from the enemy attack. The platoon is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The leaders conduct a reconnaissance of tentative fighting positions. The--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drivers stopped the vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>b. Personnel dismounted and assumed tentative hasty fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Leaders checked the tentative positions.</li> <li>d. Leaders designated sectors and general locations for observation posts (OPs), vehicles, M60s, squad automatic weapons (SAWs), and AT4's</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: At night, leaders take special precautions in designating positions. They reconnoiter the area first, position the OPs, and then have guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or OP team moves to an assigned position and sets up security.</p> <p>3. The platoon members prepare designated positions.</p> <p>4. The vehicle commanders guide the vehicles into existing hull-down, covered and concealed positions, such as reverse slopes, ravines, saddles, ditches, and draws.</p> <p>5. The platoon leader assigns each vehicle a primary forward position, at least one alternate position, and a sector of fire.</p> <p>6. The platoon leader assigns each rifle team to a primary and alternate position, crew-served weapons to a sector of fire, and AT4s to cover likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>7. The soldiers prepare prone positions at least 50 centimeters deep, using holes and ditches if available.</p> <p>8. The leaders rapidly check positions selected by platoon members.</p> <p>NOTE: At this point, the platoon leader may begin a more deliberate defense. The platoon leader selects exact fighting positions, coordinates with adjacent elements, and so forth. The platoon members prepare positions according to the platoon leader's order or the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-194-4012	Plan engineer support to a mobil defense
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** SECURE A HALT (05-3-1232)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is moving while mounted when the unit leader orders a halt. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within one minute, vehicle commanders move their vehicles into a herringbone or a coil formation, using available cover and concealment. The unit is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader gives the signal to halt the unit. The unit halts in a--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Herringbone formation (temporary halt during a tactical road march or movement in a column formation).</li> <li>b. Coil formation (prolonged halt or when 360 degree security is necessary).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The unit leader ensures that each vehicle commander positions his vehicle using available cover and concealment as part of the selected formation within 1 minute.</p> <p>* 2. The vehicle commander ensures that security is maintained by either keeping the element mounted or dismounting all or part of the element based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that element members, including air guards, continued to observe designated sectors.</li> <li>b. Ensured that members man and direct crew-served weapons toward assigned sectors.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the dismounted element members assumed hasty fighting positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The vehicle commanders take appropriate action at the halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained visual, digital, or radio communication with the unit leader.</li> <li>b. Conducted during-operation maintenance according to the applicable technical manual (TM) as time permitted.</li> <li>c. Refueled the vehicles and resupplied needed supplies, if necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
	551-721-1306	PERFORM OPERATOR/CREW PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS/SERVICES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CROSS A DANGER AREA (DISMOUNTED) (05-3-1233)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving dismounted and encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon elements prevent the enemy from surprising or decisively engaging the main body. The platoon sustains no more than 10 percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when it is conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The platoon encounters a danger area.</p> <p>* 2. The point man signals "danger area" which is relayed throughout the platoon.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon halts to maintain local security.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader moves forward to the point man to confirm the danger area.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader selects the crossing point providing the best cover and concealment.</p> <p>6. The platoon leader informs all squad leaders of the situation and the nearside and farside rally points.</p> <p>7. The platoon leader positions nearside security in a location providing cover and concealment.</p> <p>* 8. The platoon leader selects a farside clearing method based on observable terrain.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Used the box method when terrain was more open and a larger area was cleared. Used two men in successive boxes; four men in simultaneous boxes.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Used the zigzag method in dense vegetation to cover more of the immediate area.</p> <p>NOTE: The heart method takes less time and can be successive or simultaneous.</p> <p>* 9. The nearside security element provides security.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Observed flanks.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security element.</p> <p>10. The farside security element clears the farside.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Ensured that the nearside security element was in place, then directed the farside security element to cross the danger area.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Cleared the farside, especially any terrain such as small hills, folds, and streambeds that might conceal enemy positions.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The squad leader receives the all-clear signal and relays the message to the platoon leader. 12. The platoon leader establishes an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area. 13. The platoon leader selects the method the platoon will use to cross the danger area (in groups, a wedge, or a line). 14. The platoon crosses the danger area quickly and quietly while the nearside security elements overwatch the platoon's crossing. 15. The main body establishes local security once they are across the danger area. 16. The nearside security elements cross the danger area and regain their positions in the formation. 17. The platoon continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all members.</li> <li>b. Resumed tactical movement.</li> <li>c. Maintained the designated formation and personnel intervals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5630	CONDUCT MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES BY A PLATOON

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** MOVE THROUGH URBANIZED TERRAIN (05-3-1237)  
(FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon leader directs the platoon to move through a built-up area. Enemy contact is possible. The platoon must provide its own security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves all personnel and equipment through the urban area. The platoon elements prevent the enemy from surprising or decisively engaging the main body. The platoon sustains no more than 10 percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon halts outside the urban area.</li> <li>2. The crews of weapon-mounted vehicles, if available, seek cover and concealment to observe and cover urban areas.</li> <li>3. The platoon leader scans the urban area to determine a route through the urban area.</li> <li>4. The platoon leader designates the movement element and overwatch element.</li> <li>5. The rifle teams dismount.</li> <li>6. The platoon moves as two elements, a movement element and an overwatch element. The element leader ensured that--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The movement element consisted of either one or two teams. The element used two teams when the terrain was open (for example, a wide street) and moved forward to scout for danger areas.</li> <li>b. The overwatch element consisted of weapon-mounted vehicles and remaining teams. The element followed the movement element to secure the flanks and rear, and provided fire support (FS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon uses a covered and concealed route whenever possible.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved along underground passages, through or behind buildings, along walls, and over rooftops.</li> <li>b. Avoided streets, alleys, and other open areas unless absolutely necessary.</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The platoon uses cover and concealment when moving along a street.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved in single file along the side of the street, staying close to the buildings.</li> <li>b. Moved quickly and remained dispersed 3 to 5 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Assigned soldiers an area on the opposite side of the street to observe.</li> <li>d. Overwatched the buildings across the street, above the opposite team, with two teams parallel to each other on opposite sides of the street.</li> <li>e. Staggered vehicles on alternate sides of the street, staying close to buildings to decrease exposure to antiarmor weapons.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. The platoon crosses danger areas using maximum cover, concealment, speed, and overwatch techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used smoke, rubble, and debris for protection.</li> <li>b. Avoided soldier-by-soldier movement. The element crossed simultaneously as a dispersed group.</li> </ul>		
10. The platoon moves at a steady, rapid speed while maintaining security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Varied the movement rate with the terrain, mission, and threat.</li> <li>b. Cleared buildings as necessary to continue movement.</li> <li>c. Identified, reported, marked, and bypassed enemy obstacles and mines.</li> </ul>		
11. The platoon leader reports to higher headquarters when the platoon is through the urban area.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-4115	Plan minefield breaching operations
	052-193-1314	Construct urban breaching charges
	052-193-1315	OPERATE URBAN BREACHING TOOLS
	052-193-2180	Direct placement of urban breaching charges
	052-193-3552	Calculate urban breaching charges
	052-193-4120	Supervise urban breaching
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4082	Conduct a building analysis
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations buildings
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-239-3030	READ CONSTRUCTION PRINTS
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	071-326-5605	CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	071-326-5605	CONTROL FIRE-TEAM MOVEMENT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CLEAR A BUILDING (05-3-1238)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 90-10-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to clear a building. An enemy squad has established a hasty defense in the building. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building. The platoon repels enemy counterattack. The unit sustains no more than 30 percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP 4).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon into a support force and an assault force. The composition of the assault force varies depending on the availability of equipment and personnel and the tactical situation.</p> <p>2. The squad-size building clearing force--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consisted of a two 3-man assault team. The assault force carried only a fighting load of equipment and as much ammunition as possible, especially grenades. The assault force was responsible for breaching and clearing the targeted building.</li> <li>b. Consisted of a three (or more) man support force. The support force was responsible for providing suppressive fire and obscursion with automatic weapons, M-203 grenade launchers, MK19's, M-202 multishot flame weapons, and smoke. The amount and type of weapons required depended on the availability and the situation. Indirect fire support (FS), demolitions, tank main gun round, machine gun fire, and so forth, were utilized, if required.</li> </ul> <p>3. The support force provides FS for the assault force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or obscured enemy gunners within the objective building and adjacent buildings.</li> <li>b. Isolated the objective building with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement, or counterattack.</li> <li>c. Used direct fire to destroy enemy positions.</li> <li>d. Breached walls en route to and in the objective structure.</li> <li>e. Destroyed enemy positions with direct fire.</li> <li>f. Secured cleared portions of the objective.</li> <li>g. Provided replacement for the assault force.</li> <li>h. Provided resupply of ammunition and explosives.</li> <li>i. Evacuated casualties and prisoners.</li> </ul> <p>4. The assault force minimizes enemy defensive fires during movement to the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used covered and concealed routes; exploited limited visibility conditions whenever possible.</li> <li>b. Moved only after enemy defensive fires were suppressed or obscured.</li> <li>c. Moved along routes without masking friendly suppressive fires.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Crossed open areas under concealment of smoke after the support force suppressed enemy targets.</p> <p>5. The assault force enters the objective building at the highest level possible. The force enters from the rooftop and adjacent buildings, if possible, using climbing ropes, ladders, or helicopters. If forced to enter at ground level, the assault force approaches from the enemy flank or rear, avoiding windows and doors and entering through breached walls, if possible.</p> <p>6. The support force increases its rate of fire to mask the assault immediately before the assault force enters the objective building.</p> <p>7. The support force shifts fire first to the objective's upper windows and then to adjacent buildings if the assault force enters from ground level. The support force shifts support fire to the lower windows when the assault force enters through the upper story. When the assault force is inside, the support force shifts fire to the adjacent building to prevent enemy withdrawal or reinforcement.</p> <p>8. The assault force closes on the building. Before entering, a grenade is cooked off and vigorously thrown inside. After the explosion, assault teams enter and spray the interior, concentrating on areas of the room that are possible enemy positions.</p> <p>9. The assault force's priority tasks are to cover the staircases leading up and down, and to seize rooms that overlook approaches to the building once inside the building.</p> <p>10. The assault force clears the rooms.</p> <p>11. The assault team leader determines which rooms to clear first.</p> <p>12. The support team provides suppressive fire on the target building during clearing operations and to adjacent buildings, preventing enemy reinforcements or withdrawal, while assault team 1 establishes a foothold to the building.</p> <p>13. Assault team 2 positions to provide security for the foothold while assault team 1 proceeds to clear the first room.</p> <p>    a. Soldier 1 throws a grenade into the room and yells FRAG OUT or grenade to alert friendly personnel.</p> <p>NOTE: Flash bang grenades are the only grenades used to clear rooms before entry.</p> <p>    b. Soldier 2 enters the room after the explosion and positions himself to the right of the door up against the wall, scanning the room from left to right while soldiers 1 and 3 provide outside room security. Soldier 2 gives the all clear before soldier 3 enters.</p> <p>    c. Soldier 3 enters and positions himself to the right of the door up against the wall and scans the room from right to left. Soldier 2 provides inside room security while soldier 1 provides outside room security. Soldier 3 proceeds to clear the room.</p> <p>    d. Assault team 1 shouts COMING OUT after the room is cleared and proceeds to clear the next room.</p> <p>    e. A soldier from assault team 2 positions himself to cover the cleared room.</p> <p>    f. The assault force continues this procedure until the entire floor is cleared. After the floor is cleared, the assault force consolidates to continue the assault on the remainder of the building.</p> <p>    g. The assault force marks the cleared rooms according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
14. The assault and support forces consolidate and reorganize after the building is cleared. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned themselves to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration in the building.</li> <li>b. Redistributed ammunition and requested resupply as required.</li> <li>c. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>d. Marked the building to show it had been cleared, including the entry points.</li> <li>e. Established hasty defensive positions, if required.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-193-1314	Construct urban breaching charges
	052-193-1315	OPERATE URBAN BREACHING TOOLS
	052-193-2180	Direct placement of urban breaching charges
	052-193-3552	Calculate urban breaching charges
	052-193-4120	Supervise urban breaching
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4082	Conduct a building analysis
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES
	071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES
	071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE
	071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** SURRENDER TO CAPTURING UNIT ON THE BATTLEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers and documents and equipment sensitive to OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal/destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A RAID (05-3-1240)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has occupied an objective rally point (ORP) and prepares to conduct a raid. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire capabilities. The engineer platoon is reorganized as infantry. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon initiates the raid not later than the time specified in an order and surprises the enemy. The platoon does not become decisively engaged, obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site, and withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective area on order without sustaining casualties from friendly fire. The time to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element leader reorganizes the element for the raid.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the security, support, and assault elements, and the required special teams.</li> <li>b. Selected weapons, special equipment, and special teams for each element.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected weapons for each team based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>(2) Considered the use of squad automatic weapons (SAWs), antitank mines, light antitank weapons (LAWs), and claymores for the security team.</li> <li>(3) Considered the use of M60s/SAWs, LAWs, M202 flash, and snipers for the support of the team.</li> <li>(4) Designated a special team (search, prisoners of war (PWs), demolitions, aid and litter, and breaching) and had them rehearse its tasks, and conducted internal inspections.</li> <li>(5) Considered using ropes, repelling hooks, gags, blindfolds, handcuffs, poleless litters, cameras, wire and bolt cutters, megaphones, and prepared demolitions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Assigned the element sergeant to control the support element.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned primary and alternate signals for initiating, lifting, shifting, and ceasing fires, as well as assault and withdrawal.</li> <li>b. Planned for the element leader's death. The element sergeant or senior squad leader must be ready to take charge immediately if the element leader becomes a casualty. This was planned for (and rehearsed) in all phases of troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>c. Planned for mortar support. Mortars were attached to the element for certain raid operations. The mortars were fired from the ORP or from a location along the approach route, keeping possible countermortar fire in mind. This led to additional security requirements for the mortars. The forward observer (FO) was with the element leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Directed rehearsals and brief backs on lifting and shifting fires, communications failure, pyrotechnic and audible signals, escape and evasion, cutoff by the enemy, engagement criteria, and withdrawal procedures.</p> <p>e. Planned and checked communications from the raid leader.</p> <p>(1) Security positions. Communication should be by wire through the ORP, if feasible. Plan for this additional wire and assault wire, if possible. The security team should have alternate communications for early warning; for example, radio or star clusters.</p> <p>(2) Support element. Wire communication through the release point is desirable.</p> <p>f. Ensured that the security element understood its missions. Ensured early warning, blocking enemy attacks, destruction of escaping enemy, and other tasks or combinations of tasks at different stages of the raid. The method of engagement by the security team varied based on the task, such as silent-kill engagement with all available weapons and available indirect-fire support.</p> <p>g. Performed a leader's reconnaissance of the objective.</p> <p>(1) The element leader issued a contingency plan to the element sergeant before the reconnaissance party departs.</p> <p>(2) The reconnaissance party included the element, the FO, element leaders, and security teams.</p> <p>(3) The reconnaissance of the objective was conducted undetected.</p> <p>(4) The reconnaissance party, minus the surveillance team, returned undetected to the ORP.</p> <p>3. The element leader assigns each element its position and withdrawal route back to the ORP.</p> <p>a. Ensured that all elements were assigned locations to prevent navigational problems, particularly during withdrawal when the enemy was active.</p> <p>b. Assigned squad or team lanes on the objective as a fire-control measure.</p> <p>4. The security elements occupy designated positions without being detected by the enemy.</p> <p>a. Positioned to the flanks and rear of the element.</p> <p>b. Positioned on high-speed avenues of approach to the objective.</p> <p>5. The support element moves to the covered and concealed position (designated by the element leader).</p> <p>a. Moved undetected by the enemy.</p> <p>b. Positioned so that well-aimed fire was placed on the objective.</p> <p>6. The assault element moves to the assault position when directed by the element leader. The assault position should be close enough to the objective for immediate assault if detected.</p> <p>7. The element leader controls fires.</p> <p>a. Directed the support-element leader to give the command for the support element to fire. Hopefully, the enemy returned fire, disclosing their location to the assault element.</p> <p>b. Initiated planned indirect, suppressive, or obscuration fires on known and suspected enemy positions. These fires masked the sound of the assault element moving forward.</p> <p>c. Signaled the lift or shift of support element fires and indirect fires before the assault.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The element leader orders the assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Led the assault element.</li> <li>b. Maintained control of the entire raid, the assault element, and all communications from his location.</li> </ul> <p>9. The security element, once the assault has started, prevents enemy entry into or escape from objective area.</p> <p>10. The squad or teams of the assault elements remain in their assigned lane and fight forward at a pace that combat permits.</p> <p>11. The assault element fights through and consolidates and reorganizes on the far side of the objective.</p> <p>12. Special teams accomplish all assigned tasks (demolition teams set charges, search teams search the objective for the enemy and secures any enemy survivors as prisoners).</p> <p>13. The element accomplishes its assigned tasks within the commander's intent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw from the objective.</li> <li>b. Killed, wounded, captured, or forced the withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy.</li> <li>c. Captured specified personnel.</li> <li>d. Destroyed specified equipment, facilities, or installation.</li> </ul> <p>14. The element withdraws from the objective on the element leader's signal and returns to the ORP or designated rally point.</p> <p>15. The element leader accounts for all personnel and calls for indirect fire to cover the withdrawal of the element from the objective.</p> <p>16. The element withdraws from the objective to the ORP to recover equipment or waits for follow-on orders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated information gained on the objective to the element.</li> <li>b. Submitted situation and intelligence reports to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-1314	Construct urban breaching charges
	052-193-1315	OPERATE URBAN BREACHING TOOLS
	052-193-2180	Direct placement of urban breaching charges
	052-193-3552	Calculate urban breaching charges
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4082	Conduct a building analysis

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES
	071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES
	071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE
	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**TASK:** SURRENDER TO CAPTURING UNIT ON THE BATTLEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers and documents and equipment sensitive to OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal/destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REACT TO CONTACT (05-3-7122)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 17-95)  
(FM 5-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon, moving mounted or dismounted, makes visual contact with the enemy or encounters enemy fire. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon returns fire within 3 seconds, locates and engages the enemy with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds, and causes at least one enemy casualty. The leader can point out at least one-half of the enemy positions and identify the types of weapons and such as small arms or light machine guns). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon makes visual contact with the enemy, evaluates the situation, and determines a course of action (COA).</li> <li>2. The platoon leader chooses to bypass if the enemy is not a threat and the mission is not impeded.</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader gives the order to conduct fire and movement if the enemy is a threat or the mission is impeded.</li> <li>* 4. The platoon reacts to enemy fire.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Took cover immediately and returned fire within 3 seconds.</li> <li>b. Located actual or suspected enemy positions and engaged them with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds.</li> <li>c. Made contact (visual or verbal) with the platoon members on their left and right.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader communicates with the platoon members.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Relayed commands and signals to the squad leaders.</li> <li>b. Made frequent visual contact with the squad leaders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 6. The squad leaders communicate with the squad members.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the status of the squad members either visually or verbally.</li> <li>b. Relayed commands and signals from the platoon leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon leader evaluates the situation and determines the COA.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used an assault element to attack the objective by using fire and movement if the enemy was outnumbered or the mission was impeded.</li> <li>b. Gave the order to disengage to defend from another battle position, prepared a counterattack, withdrew, or continued the mission if the platoon was outnumbered.</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The platoon leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) and includes enemy contact and casualty information.</li> </ol>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0012	Operate an M249 Machine Gun
	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES
	071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES
STP 21-II-MQS	071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE
	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
STP 21-I-MQS	01-5700.02-0001	Enforce Platoon and Company Communications Security Measures
	01-9001.19-0001	Take Charge of a Platoon or Equivalent Organization
	04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders
STP 21-I-MQS	01-5700.02-0001	Enforce Platoon and Company Communications Security Measures
	01-9001.19-0001	Take Charge of a Platoon or Equivalent Organization
	04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** SURRENDER TO CAPTURING UNIT ON THE BATTLEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers and documents and equipment sensitive to OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal/destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
(FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert INCOMING or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within two seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.</li> <li>2. The platoon leader gives the direction and the distance for the unit to move; for example, 3 o'clock, 200 meters.</li> <li>3. The vehicle commanders repeat the INCOMING to squad personnel.</li> <li>4. The platoon personnel close all hatches.</li> <li>* 5. The platoon drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> <li>6. The platoon reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicle--                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as closely as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel, keeping low, ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted.</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The platoon members move to designated rally points according to the platoon's operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>9. The platoon establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> <li>10. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes.</li> <li>11. The platoon leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP).</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	04-3305.01-0013	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES (07-2-0333.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 21-60) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The element is operating as a separate unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit's main body is not surprised by the enemy during the departure from friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the operation order (OPORD).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated planning for the operation.</li> <li>b. Conducted coordination for the operation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The passing element leader meets with the stationary element leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arranged for a specific time.</li> <li>b. Determined the meeting location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The passing element leader or his authorized representative coordinates the passage through and the reentry of lines with the forward element leader or his authorized representative.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel from both elements were aware of each element's identification.</li> <li>b. Kept the stationary element leader informed of the size of the passing element.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times of departure and return.</li> <li>d. Defined the area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The passing leader or his authorized representative coordinates with the stationary leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged enemy intelligence information.</li> <li>b. Completed a joint reconnaissance of the position.</li> <li>c. Explained the passing element's scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>d. Coordinated recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>e. Planned for guides and passage control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security measures for the passage.</li> <li>g. Designated fire-support (FS) responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>h. Exchanged information on the terrain and the existing obstacles.</li> <li>i. Determined when and where the battle handover occurs.</li> <li>j. Coordinated combat-service support (CSS) for the items left on the position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Both leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned the locations of the contact points.</li> <li>b. Pointed the locations of the passage points.</li> <li>c. Identified release points (RPs) and the battle handover line.</li> <li>d. Exchanged call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and passwords.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Both leaders perform a leader reconnaissance of the passage area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located the passage-of-lines points.</li> <li>b. Identified the obstacle locations and safety lines.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the RPs.</li> <li>d. Reconnoitered the assembly area (AA) for the rearward passage.</li> <li>e. Identified the contact points.</li> <li>f. Walked the stationary element positions.</li> <li>g. Identified combat support (CS) and CSS elements (command posts [CPs], observation posts [OPs], and antiarmor and mortar positions).</li> <li>h. Ensured that the leader's reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The passing leader checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged intelligence information on the enemy.</li> <li>b. Exchanged terrain data.</li> </ul> <p>8. The passing element arrives in the stationary element area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting with the stationary leader.</li> <li>b. Started final preparations for the passage of lines.</li> </ul> <p>9. The passing element leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the element on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>c. Prescribed actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>d. Briefed actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>e. Provided a time schedule, a suspense list, and any limits on actions.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The passing element leader completes coordination with the stationary element leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirmed recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the guides.</li> <li>c. Confirmed traffic-control measures.</li> <li>d. Confirmed security measures for the passage.</li> <li>e. Colocated both leaders to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.</li> </ul> <p>11. The passing element moves to a position near the point of contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Provided cover and concealment during movement and at the position near the point of contact.</li> </ul> <p>12. The passing element's security team passes through the passage lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Linked up with the guides from the stationary element.</li> <li>b. Moved with the guides from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</li> <li>c. Cleared the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reported when the area was secure.</p> <p>13. The remainder of the passage element moves through the passage lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved forward to the RPs.</li> <li>b. Identified and accounted for passage personnel (as confirmed by the guides) as the element passed through the RP.</li> <li>c. Ensured that movement was continuous throughout the passage.</li> <li>d. Executed a security halt after the company had moved beyond the friendly element's final protective fires (FPF).</li> <li>e. Executed the movement of the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), and the platoon sergeant (PSG) from the RP forward, only after the leader was sure that he did not have to withdraw through the passage point.</li> </ul> <p>14. The passing element makes a reentry through the friendly lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Halted the element and established the reentry rally point.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE to the National Guard (NG): If in contact with the enemy, the element does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary element lead the element through the passage points, or long-range signals are used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Contacted the forward element by radio and told them, by the use of a prearranged code word, that the element was ready to reenter. (The leader may opt to keep the element outside of friendly lines until daybreak.)</li> <li>c. Acknowledged receipt of the message.</li> </ul> <p>15. The forward element directs a security team on an azimuth and distance to the contact point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established contact with the stationary element guides using far- and near-recognition signals.</li> <li>b. Signaled the element forward or went back and led the element to the passage point.</li> <li>c. Counted and identified each element as it passed through the passage point (1SG or XO and PSG).</li> </ul> <p>16. The element, led by a guide from the stationary element, moves through the passage point and to the assembly area (AA) behind the friendly element. The leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>b. Reported to the stationary element CP; provided tactical information concerning the area of responsibility.</li> </ul> <p>17. The passing leader links up with his element in the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the element for movement to a secure area.</li> <li>b. Led the element to a secure area.</li> <li>c. Conducted the debriefing.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON
	071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined-arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the element's main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the quartering party personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew, based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined the essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the time of the main body's arrival at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the order of march.</li> <li>e. Relayed the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the route of march from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked the obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the element quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted the guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked the vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Marked or removed the mines and obstacles.                      f. Organized and posted local security.</p> <p>5. The element occupies the AA.                      a. Moved the quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to selected or designated areas without halting.                      b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</p> <p>6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter.                      a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).                      b. Positioned the vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.                      c. Established the observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach.                      d. Established digital and frequency modulated (FM) communications between all positions. Used wire communications, if the time and situation permitted.                      e. Prepared the range cards.                      f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions.                      g. Cleared the fields of fire.                      h. Camouflaged the positions.                      i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early-warning devices.</p> <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the AA.                      a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment.                      b. Distributed the ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.                      c. Established the personal-hygiene and field-sanitation sites.                      d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline.                      e. Instituted the rest plan for element members and leaders.                      f. Inspected the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the element on the left and the right as a minimum.                      a. Established the responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.                      b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the element's signals.                      c. Coordinated local counterattacks.                      d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>9. The leaders develop contingency plans.                      a. Developed an evacuation plan.                      b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</p> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.                      a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan.                      b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)
	071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
	071-326-5705 071-326-5775	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON
STP 21-II-MQS	04-3302.01-0003	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED
	04-3306.01-0007	Conduct a Reconnaissance
STP 21-I-MQS	04-3302.01-0003	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
	04-3306.01-0007	Conduct a Reconnaissance Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A CONVOY (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An operation order (OPORD) requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat-mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified the checkpoints.</li> <li>e. Pointed out the sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified the map information.</li> <li>e. Listed the capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Listed the locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates with higher headquarters (HQ) for the following required support:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military Police (MP).</li> <li>b. Medical.</li> <li>c. Fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Engineer.</li> <li>e. Maintenance contact team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Additional requirements, as required.</p> <p>4. The company prepares the vehicles and the equipment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened the vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on the vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed the reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed the antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo-vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned the control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned the recovery vehicles position.</li> <li>d. Arranged the hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle-position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Prescribed the rate-of-march speed and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed the immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed the blackout-condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed the communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.</li> </ol> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP-crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides the convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP-crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the checkpoints clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the data that conflicted with maps.</li> <li>d. Employed the correct signal operation instruction (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP-crossing time.</li> </ol> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed checkpoints as scheduled.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.                      e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.                      a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.                      b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals.                      c. Moved the vehicles off the road.                      d. Established local security.                      e. Performed PMCS.                      f. Inspected vehicle loads.                      g. Departed at the specified times.</p> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.                      a. Alerted the march column.                      b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.                      c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.                      d. Established local security.                      e. Reported resumption of the march to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.                      a. Provided a visual adjustment period.                      b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions.                      c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances.                      d. Wore night-vision goggles (specified personnel).                      e. Wore regular eye-protection goggles.                      f. Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.                      a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.                      b. Repaired disabled vehicles, when possible.                      c. Towed the vehicles.                      d. Reported vehicle status to the convoy commander.</p> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.                      a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.                      b. Employed close-column formation.                      c. Obeyed traffic-control directions.                      d. Employed direction guides at critical intersections.</p> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.                      a. Crossed at the specified time.                      b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.                      c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** ESTABLISH UNIT DEFENSE (07-3-0219.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit's defensive sector, or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. The platoon may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps.</li> <li>b. Established local security.</li> <li>c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination.</li> <li>d. Designated sectors and general locations for the operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons, based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced the M8A1 chemical alarm system, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP.</li> <li>b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small-arms fire.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel.</li> <li>d. Designated the covered and concealed routes to and from the OP.</li> <li>e. Established communications from the operations to the unit's command post (CP). The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio.</li> <li>f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan.</li> </ul> <p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range that warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body.</li> <li>b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit's position.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets.</p> <p>d. Emplaced expedient early-warning devices before dark, if possible.</p> <p>e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password.</p> <p>f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <p>a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA).</p> <p>b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA).</p> <p>c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs.</p> <p>d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside the hand-grenade range.</p> <p>* 6. The leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <p>a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and the weapon's range.</p> <p>b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <p>a. Established boundary responsibilities.</p> <p>b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the observation and fires overlapped.</p> <p>8. The platoon occupies defensive positions.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally these are in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</p> <p>a. Occupied the assigned positions, physically.</p> <p>b. Reconnoitered physically in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, to locate dead space, and to view the terrain from the enemy's perspective.</p> <p>c. Prepared and forwarded the crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning.</p> <p>d. Installed the aiming stakes.</p> <p>e. Cleared the fields of fire.</p> <p>f. Emplaced the obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan.</p> <p>g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 18 inches of parapet.</p> <p>h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.</p> <p>i. Camouflaged the positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation. Ensured that the fighting positions could not be detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position.</p> <p>j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</p> <p>k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>l. Ensured that all platoon members knew the platoon CP location.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leader with the fire-support team (FIST) or FO, if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <p>a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs.</p> <p>b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Planned the final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Registered and adjusted the TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.</p> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The squad leader prepares a sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to them.</li> <li>b. Identified the location of the squad's fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</li> <li>d. Identified the type of weapon and fire-control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and final protective line [FPL]) for each position.</li> <li>e. Identified the squad leader's position and the location of the OPs.</li> <li>f. Marked dead space on the sketch.</li> <li>g. Identified the location of the obstacles.</li> <li>h. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The platoon leader prepares a platoon-sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA.</li> <li>b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Indicated the location of the vehicles, antiarmor and automatic weapons' positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and the TRPs.</li> <li>d. Identified the location of the OPs and the patrol routes, if any had been planned.</li> <li>e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated.</li> <li>g. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to the company level.</li> <li>i. Indicated the date-time group.</li> <li>j. Identified the position of the platoon CP.</li> <li>k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon-sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</li> </ul> <p>13. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Improved according to the SOP work priorities.</li> <li>b. Upgraded as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES
	071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
STP 21-II-MQS	071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD
	01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation
STP 21-I-MQS	04-1910.11-1001	Camouflage Self, Individual Equipment, and Position
	04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position
	04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance
	01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation
	04-1910.11-1001	Camouflage Self, Individual Equipment, and Position
	04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position
	04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]) and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, SP, RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the organization for movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Provided for security tasks to subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air-guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; air attack; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldier with load guides.</li> <li>g. Briefed the plan of each subordinate leader.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</li> <li>b. Completed a communications check using digital and frequency modulated (FM) radios to report the element's readiness to move.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the rate of march specified in the order or the unit's SOP.</li> <li>c. Followed the prescribed route.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</li> <li>b. Oriented as directed, to establish local security.</li> </ul> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP using the DRS.</li> </ul> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</li> <li>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</li> <li>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal (MSRT).</li> <li>d. Positioned the vehicles in a herringbone formation.</li> <li>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</li> <li>f. Checked the condition of the personnel and equipment.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with adjacent unit.</li> <li>h. Reported status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul> <p>8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</li> <li>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</li> <li>c. Used control measures from the order, modified as needed.</li> </ul> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</li> <li>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</li> <li>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
MOS E COM 9	551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP
	071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
	071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS
	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
	551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY
	551-721-1363	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH OR WITHOUT TRAILER/SEMITRAILER IN BLACKOUT CONDITIONS
	551-721-1408	IMPLEMENT DEFENSIVE PROCEDURES WHEN UNDER ENEMY ATTACK OR AMBUSH IN A TRUCK CONVOY
STP 21-24-SMCT	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	O1-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations
	O1-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations
	O3-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
	O4-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders
	O4-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted
	O4-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support
	O4-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map
STP 21-I-MQS	O1-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	O1-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations
	O1-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations
	O3-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
	O4-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders
	O4-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	O4-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support
	O4-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-3-4129.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate that small opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. The OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Elements in the main defensive positions are not surprised by the OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units, forcing enemy withdrawal. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The observation posts (OPs) detect and correctly identify the enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy activity before the main body was engaged.</li> <li>b. Reported using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Actuated the alert plan according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Occupied the fighting positions within 1 minute of the initial warning.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit reports enemy contact.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy contact using the SALUTE format to the company headquarters (HQ) within 1 minute of contact using the frequency modulated (FM) radio.</li> <li>b. Rendered additional situation reports (SITREPs) as the situation changed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The OPs return to the unit's position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used covered and concealed routes back to the defensive position.</li> <li>b. Did not become decisively engaged.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Indirect fire and or close-air support is requested, if available and applicable.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the call-for-fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the fire within 30 seconds of round impact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element reacts to the enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed the obstacle plan according to the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO); for example, detonated demolitions, detonated Claymore mines on order, or triggered lines.</li> <li>b. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered to do so.</li> <li>c. Controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Repositioned the vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed.</p> <p>e. Initiated the final protective fires (FPF), if required.</p> <p>f. Directed counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required.</p> <p>g. Defended the position until the enemy was repelled or when orders to disengage were received from higher HQ.</p> <p>h. Sustained no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.</p> <p>7. The element reacts to the indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Initiated the alert by any member yelling INCOMING. Also alerted the subordinate elements by other available communications means.</p> <p>b. Sought protection under the overhead cover of the fighting positions. If personnel were in the open, they moved to fighting positions or out of the area.</p> <p>c. Moved the vehicles out of the impact area to alternate positions, if applicable.</p> <p>* 8. The leaders reorganize the element.</p> <p>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Submitted the SITREP to the company commander.</p> <p>c. Cross-leveled the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistributed the ammunition.</p> <p>e. Reoccupied the operations, key weapons, and positions immediately.</p> <p>f. Treated and evacuated casualties as necessary. All first aid common tasks were reviewed.</p> <p>g. Submitted casualty reports.</p> <p>h. Updated the personnel roster.</p> <p>i. Processed the enemy prisoners of war (EPW) and captured materials.</p> <p>* 9. The leaders consolidate the element.</p> <p>a. Repositioned the operations.</p> <p>b. Reestablished communication with the elements.</p> <p>c. Repositioned the personnel.</p> <p>d. Reassigned the sectors of fire to cover all gaps.</p> <p>e. Implemented the sleep and alert plan.</p> <p>10. The unit continues the mission.</p> <p>a. Continued on orders from the company commander.</p> <p>b. Continued as soon as the tactical situation permitted.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** MOVE TACTICALLY (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to move cross-country mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The platoon retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an area of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual areas of responsibility.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-round coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used, based on METT-TC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>NOTE: (DISMOUNTED) The lead squad uses traveling overwatch and the trailing squads use traveling.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>* 8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operation security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The platoon maintains security during the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning.</p> <p>*11. The leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <p>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</p> <p>b. Positioned key weapons.</p> <p>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</li> <li>b. Used arm and hand signals once contact was made.</li> <li>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</li> </ul> 13. The platoon leader knows the platoon location at all times. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Knew the location of all the platoon elements and the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements, and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE PERSONNEL FOR DEPLOYMENT (12-1-0409.05-T01A)  
 (TC 12-16) (AR 220-10) (AR 600-38)  
 (AR 600-8) (AR 600-8-14) (AR 600-8-2)  
 (AR 600-8-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. It is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion soldiers are administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans preparation for oversea movement (POM).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established processing requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated POM with brigade S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 or Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel), for personnel service company (PSC) support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with medical department activity (MEDDAC) and dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with POM site commander.</li> <li>b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures.</li> <li>c. Issued POM checklist.</li> <li>d. Reviewed family care plans.</li> <li>e. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms.</li> <li>g. Reviewed POM checklist for completeness.</li> <li>h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated installation support.</li> <li>b. Established briefing site and schedules.</li> <li>c. Published family-support packet.</li> <li>d. Monitored family-support briefings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY  
 (03-2-3008.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company or element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of, or information on, radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance platoon. The plan is issued with the two-thirds planning time remaining for the platoon. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the platoon to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The commander and the operations section makes a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance/survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with units in the area of operations if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander orders units to start movement if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area and makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> <li>* 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</li> <li>* 7. The commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance/survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The company conducts a tactical road march or executes traveling movement to the reconnaissance/survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission requires.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters, if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance/survey units' recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The commander or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs returning reconnaissance/survey units and forwards acquired information to higher headquarters in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format if required.</p> <p>11. The radiological company leaders records, collates, and submits to higher headquarters individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS (03-2-C312.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include a thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment/vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. The responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from subordinate leaders and/or staff.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ul> <p>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters. The request should, as a minimum, include the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles/equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Earliest possible time the unit could move/begin decontamination.</li> <li>h. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ul> <p>3. The contaminated unit's higher headquarters chemical staff--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the movement of the contaminated unit to the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements (medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support, and so forth).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.</p> <p>4. The contaminated unit, decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point.</p> <p>5. The decontamination-unit leader briefs the site layout and the procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site/staging area activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated contaminated vehicles/equipment from uncontaminated ones, if possible.</li> <li>b. Dismounted the vehicles (except the drivers), ensuring that they-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Removed all equipment from the tops of the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they were exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Prepared vehicles for detailed equipment decontamination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used pioneer tools to remove all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle.</li> <li>(2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials which could absorb chemical contaminants.</li> <li>(3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Moved contaminated personnel and vehicles/equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines.</li> </ul> <p>7. The designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site and coordinate with the supported unit for additional communications support.</p> <p>* 8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination-site stations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Initial wash.</li> <li>b. Station 2. DS2 application.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Rinse.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Check.</li> </ul> <p>9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Overgarment removal.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Monitor.</li> <li>f. Station 6. Mask removal.</li> <li>g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point.</li> <li>h. Station 8. Reissue point.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The decontamination-unit leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>10. The decontamination-unit leader (in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit) supervises an overall thorough decontamination-site operation.</p> <p>11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles/equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the drivers moved the vehicles/equipment through the stations.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once interior decontamination was completed.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and vehicles/equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area.</p> <p>12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations.</p> <p>13. The decontamination unit's soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Station 1.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE), hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of super tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps.</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> <p>b. Station 2 (for chemical/biological only).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Applied DS2 to PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</li> <li>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign in the Station 4 sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</li> <li>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants on the vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</li> </ol> <p>c. Station 3.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspected unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded on the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Threw contaminated supplies in the Station 4 sump.</li> </ol> <p>d. Station 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (PDDE, hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 was placed in the sump).</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> <p>e. Station 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station.</li> <li>(2) Loaded all the reusable equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(3) Discarded unusable items in the Station 4 sump.</li> </ol> <p>14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Placed all the used supplies from Station 7 in the Station 7 sump. b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1. c. Discarded unusable supplies from Stations 5, 4, and 3 in the sump at Station 1. d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1. e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 in the sump at that station. f. Marked the area. g. Removed overgarments utilizing the MOPP gear exchange technique. h. Disposed of used overgarments in the Station 1 sump. i. Moved all the equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area. j. Decontaminated rubber gloves and moved all equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used the fill the sump. k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps. l. Marked the sumps. m. Submitted a NBC 4 report to higher headquarters defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation.  *16. The contaminated unit conducts reconstitution activities. a. Coordinated with supported battalions for assessment and recovery team(s). b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support. c. Coordinated and requested medical support. d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS E COM 9	031-503-1013	DECONTAMINATE YOURSELF AND INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATING KITS
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1031	USE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR
MOS E 54B 1	031-504-1008	OPERATE THE M8A1 ALARM SYSTEM
	031-505-1011	OPERATE THE AN/PDR27-SERIES RADIAC SET.
MOS E COM 9	031-506-1053	REPORT NBC INFORMATION USING NBC 4 REPORT
No STP and No MOS	031-506-2027	SELECT DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION SITE
MOS E 54B 9	031-506-2027	SELECT DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION SITE

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-506-4025	ESTABLISH DECONTAMINATION MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS
MOS E COM 9	031-507-1002	DECOMTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING ABC-M11 DECONTAMINATION APPARATUS
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1018	OPERATE THE 65-GPM PUMP
MOS E 54B 9	031-507-1020	OPERATE THE M12A1 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1020	OPERATE THE M12A1 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS
MOS E COM 9	031-507-1021	MARK NBC CONTAMINATED AREA
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1022	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
MOS E 54B 1	031-507-1022	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1039	TROUBLESHOOT M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
	031-507-1041	OPERATE THE M17 LIGHTWEIGHT DECONTAMINATING SYSTEM
MOS E 54B 1	031-507-1041	OPERATE THE M17 LIGHTWEIGHT DECONTAMINATING SYSTEM
MOS E 54B 2	031-507-2013	SUPERVISE DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION
No STP and No MOS	031-507-2013	SUPERVISE DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION
MOS E 54B 2	031-507-2018	SUPERVISE DETAILED TROOP DECONTAMINATION
No STP and No MOS	031-507-2018	SUPERVISE DETAILED TROOP DECONTAMINATION
MOS E 54B 2	031-507-2038	CONTROL CONTAMINATED WASTE
No STP and No MOS	031-507-3003	SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS
MOS E 54B 3	071-326-3049	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES FOR AN OPERATION
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION
	031-503-1031	USE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC)  
 CONDITIONS (03-3-C201.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the OPOD.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that soldiers could mask and hood within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers could assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The unit's soldiers take actions to protect themselves against NBC attack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> <li>(2) What were the current weather conditions (see chemical downwind message (CDM) or weather report)?</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) What were the weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1004	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/ CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/ CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION
	031-503-1032	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR MOVEMENT

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1035	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION USING YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1038	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE
MOS E 54B 1	031-504-1008	OPERATE THE M8A1 ALARM SYSTEM
No STP and No MOS	031-505-1011	OPERATE THE AN/PDR27-SERIES RADIAC SET.
	031-505-2001	MAINTAIN AN/PDR 75 RADIAC SET
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING (ENTERING OR EXITING) A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	031-506-2010	CALCULATE TIME OF ENTRY/TIME OF STAY FOR FALLOUT AREAS
MOS E 54B 2	031-506-2019	SUPERVISE PREPARATION OF VEHICLES, EQUIPMENT, AND PERSONNEL FOR NBC RECON
No STP and No MOS	031-506-2027	SELECT DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION SITE
	031-506-2054	ADVISE COMMANDER ON CROSSING CONTAMINATED AREA
	031-506-3085	ADVISE COMMANDER AND STAFF ON OPERATIONAL EXPOSURE GUIDANCE (OEG)
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare, or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assumes mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes, and completes preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reaching their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.  2. The unit's personnel starts defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists, and to either their right or left ankles, and to the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of position.  3. The unit's personnel prepares fighting positions/shelters. a. Used existing natural or man-made facilities as fighting positions and shelters (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels). b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.  * 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel are at MOPP4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.  * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION
	031-503-1035	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION USING YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1037	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 OR M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-503-4004	SUPERVISE PLATOON PREPARATION FOR NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL(NBC) ATTACK
	031-504-1008	OPERATE THE M8A1 ALARM SYSTEM
	031-504-3001	SUPERVISE POSITIONING OF THE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARM
	031-506-2027	SELECT DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION SITE
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assumes MOPP4, and utilizes available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 15 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit's leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Put on protective masks with hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. The soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. The soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Conducted wipe down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator's spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties are provided medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1013	DECONTAMINATE YOURSELF AND INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATING KITS
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1019	REACT TO CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL HAZARD/ATTACK
	031-503-1035	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION USING YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3002	CONDUCT UNMASKING PROCEDURES
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-507-1002	DECOMTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING ABC-M11 DECONTAMINATION APPARATUS
	031-507-1022	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION
	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)

ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike-warning message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by return message.</li> </ul> * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed the actions as directed.</li> </ul> 3. The unit's soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018 031-503-2013	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3006 031-503-4002	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-503-4004	SUPERVISE PLATOON PREPARATION FOR NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL(NBC) ATTACK
	031-506-3020 031-506-3084	SUPERVISE RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING RECOMMEND PROTECTIVE MEASURES FOR FRIENDLY TROOPS IN STRIKWARN AREA
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003 052-218-4013	Conduct digital troop leader procedures Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit's leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.		
* 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> <li>h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available).</li> <li>i. Used field-expedient shelters.</li> </ul>		
* 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued periodic monitoring.</li> <li>b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-503-4004	SUPERVISE PLATOON PREPARATION FOR NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL(NBC) ATTACK
	031-506-1051	RECORD DATA ON DA FORM 1971-R OR 1971-1-R
	031-506-3020	SUPERVISE RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn back the dose/turn back the dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, use sandbags on the vehicle's floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> 3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).</li> </ul> 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-2023	MEASURE RADIATION DOSE RATE AND TOTAL DOSE
	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-506-3020	SUPERVISE RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters smoke, friendly or enemy, while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Used threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ul> 2. The unit employs organic smoke-grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered a larger area than the unit's position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ul> 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition systems were effective in the smoke and uses them.</li> <li>b. Requested target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ul> * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests resupply of smoke munitions when required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-5080.02-2021	Plan to Counter Smoke Operations
	031-508-1079	EMPLOY SMOKE POTS
	031-508-2060	PREDICT WEATHER AND TERRAIN EFFECTS ON SMOKE
MOS E 54B 3	031-508-2066	DETERMINE SMOKE POT REQUIREMENTS
	031-508-3061	PLAN SMOKE OPERATIONS
	031-508-3067	CONTROL SMOKE OPERATIONS
No STP and No MOS	031-508-3074	DESCRIBE THE EFFECTS OF SMOKE ON ELECTRO-OPTICAL SYSTEMS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL); food; and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> 2. The designated personnel monitor fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher headquarters based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-2023	MEASURE RADIATION DOSE RATE AND TOTAL DOSE
MOS E 54B 1	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-506-1051	RECORD DATA ON DA FORM 1971-R OR 1971-1-R
No STP and No MOS	031-506-1053	REPORT NBC INFORMATION USING NBC 4 REPORT
MOS E 54B 2	031-506-2010	CALCULATE TIME OF ENTRY/TIME OF STAY FOR FALLOUT AREAS
	031-506-2015	COMPUTE TOTAL DOSE FOR FALLOUT AREA
No STP and No MOS	031-506-3020	SUPERVISE RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept head and face down and helmet on.</li> <li>(4) Remained prone until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter (fighting positions/inside shelters).</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 (Nuclear) report to the higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher headquarters.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area-damage-control plan as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires before they spread out of control.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. The soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Performed operators maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The soldiers improve cover (if applicable). a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-2023	MEASURE RADIATION DOSE RATE AND TOTAL DOSE
MOS E 54B 1	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-506-1051	RECORD DATA ON DA FORM 1971-R OR 1971-1-R
No STP and No MOS	031-506-3020	SUPERVISE RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
081-831-1040	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A ONE-MAN CARRY	
081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
	081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (STP 21-1-SMCT) (STP 3-54B2-SM)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, unit decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provides temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff or subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters. The request should, as a minimum, include the--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles/equipment, by type, that are contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) crew, decontamination squad/platoon, and so forth).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The contaminated unit's leader and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Good drainage.</li> <li>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.</li> <li>e. Area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange sites).</li> </ul> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decontamination unit).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher headquarters of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination unit.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and selected decontamination sites.</li> </ul> <p>6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> </ul> <p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. The contaminated unit provided personnel to do this if the crews did not dismount.</li> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle operators maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> <li>b. Vehicles were washed properly. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</li> <li>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Monitored water consumption.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Vehicles moved to the assembly area after vehicle washdown.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Vehicle operators moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with super tropical bleach (STB) dry mix).</li> <li>b. Briefed the MOPP gear exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Placed decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanged the MOPP gear using the buddy system.</li> <li>e. Moved soldiers to the assembly area after completing the MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Ensured that the supporting units had the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</p> <p>NOTE: The supporting decontamination unit cleaned and marked the site and reported the area of contamination (using NBC 4 report) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>10. The units' leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination.</p> <p>11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the completion and location of the decontamination site (vehicle washdown and the MOPP gear exchange sites).</li> <li>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard was detected.</li> <li>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher headquarters).</li> </ul> <p>12. The contaminated unit continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1011	MAINTAIN YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1013	DECONTAMINATE YOURSELF AND INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATING KITS
	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION
	031-503-1031	USE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR
	031-503-1035	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION USING YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1036	MAINTAIN YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1037	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 OR M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1038	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3002	CONDUCT UNMASKING PROCEDURES
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
MOS E 54B 1	031-505-1011	OPERATE THE AN/PDR27-SERIES RADIAC SET.
No STP and No MOS	031-506-1053	REPORT NBC INFORMATION USING NBC 4 REPORT
	031-506-3001	PLAN DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS
	031-506-4025	ESTABLISH DECONTAMINATION MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS
	031-507-1002	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING ABC-M11 DECONTAMINATION APPARATUS
	031-507-1020	OPERATE THE M12A1 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS
	031-507-1021	MARK NBC CONTAMINATED AREA

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-507-1022	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
	031-507-1039	TROUBLESHOOT M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
MOS E 54B 1	031-507-1040	PERFORM OPERATOR PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES ON M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1041	OPERATE THE M17 LIGHTWEIGHT DECONTAMINATING SYSTEM
	031-507-2006	CONDUCT UNSUPPORTED OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
	031-507-2038	CONTROL CONTAMINATED WASTE
	031-507-3003	SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1004	DETERMINE THE ELEVATION OF A POINT ON THE GROUND USING A MAP
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	113-600-2007	OPERATE TELEPHONE SET TA-312/PT
	551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)
	850-001-4001	INTEGRATE RISK MANAGEMENT IN PLATOON MISSION
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1038	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is enroute to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 5 (Chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the route of march or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to the soldiers and the vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title	
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1013	DECONTAMINATE YOURSELF AND INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATING KITS	
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	
	031-503-1019	REACT TO CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL HAZARD/ATTACK	
	031-503-1035	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION USING YOUR ASSIGNED PROTECTIVE MASK	
	031-503-1037	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 OR M9 DETECTOR PAPER	
	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT	
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	
	031-506-1053	REPORT NBC INFORMATION USING NBC 4 REPORT	
	031-507-1002	DECOMTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING ABC-M11 DECONTAMINATION APPARATUS	
	031-507-1022	DECONTAMINATE EQUIPMENT USING M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE	
	031-507-1039	TROUBLESHOOT M13 DECONTAMINATING APPARATUS, PORTABLE	
	MOS O COM 2 No STP and No MOS	04-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map
		052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
052-218-3002		Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2	
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures	
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awarness using ABCS	
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	
	031-503-1030	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR OPERATION	
	031-503-1031	USE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR	
	031-503-1032	PREPARE THE CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR FOR MOVEMENT	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS
	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
STP 21-II-MQS	04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass
	04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
STP 21-I-MQS	04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass
	04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (05-2-0301)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air- and ground-surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle's track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. The operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features, such as hilltops and road intersections, that may have been used as a reference point by enemy ground and aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so their shape blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shape or shadow of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Ensured that heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) were kept under screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul>		
<p>* 4. The leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Ensured that the unit's activities did not change the area's appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking them with terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of the debris or spoil from the area.  * 5. The leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1361	CAMOUFLAGE YOURSELF AND YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT
	052-191-1362	CAMOUFLAGE EQUIPMENT
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
STP 21-II-MQS	01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position
	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures
STP 21-I-MQS	04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders
	01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position
	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures
	04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENT:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (PLATOON [PLT]) (05-3-0001)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A platoon is supporting a task force (TF) and has received guidance from the TF commander. The platoon leader has completed an engineer estimate and developed the initial engineer plan to support the operation. The maneuver-commander's guidance identifies obstacles, responsibilities, obstacle belts, obstacle-restricted areas, scatterable-mine employment authority and concepts, priorities, and special instructions. This task should not be trained in MOPPA.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. It outlines how and where the obstacles will be used to channelize or block the enemy force.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader obtains and considers all available information. The information includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The constraints and restraints received from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. The TF tactical plans.</li> <li>c. The initial analysis developed as part of the engineer estimate process.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The platoon leader develops an initial plan. The plan includes the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obstacles directed by higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Obstacles directed by the TF commander.</li> <li>c. Obstacle belts in the area of operation.</li> <li>d. Obstacle-restricted areas.</li> <li>e. Scatterable-mine employment concept (identified by the type of scatterable mine system).</li> <li>f. Scatterable-mine employment authority (based on the type of system and the self-destruct time).</li> <li>g. Priority of the distribution of assets. (1) Class IV. (2) Class V (engineer). (3) Other obstacle assets under the maneuver element or engineer control, to include the units from the higher echelons. (4) Scatterable-mine allocation, by sortie, for air-delivered scatterable mines (Gator) and the air Multiple-Delivery Mine System (Volcano); the number of rounds for the Area Denial Artillery Munitions (ADAM) or the Remote Antiarmor-Mine System; the number of mines or reloads for the Ground-Emplaced Mine-Scattering System (GEMSS) or the GEMSS auxiliary dispenser, M138 (Flipper) and the Volcano; and the number of dispensers for a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS).</li> <li>h. Authority to execute a mission and the special instructions for reserved demolitions or obstacles.</li> <li>i. Lanes and the routes key to the maneuver element or the logistics plan and the instructions for their closure.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The initial plan contains tentative information. While directive in nature, the specifics of the plan are modified based on the tactical plans of the subordinate maneuver elements.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader integrates the initial obstacle plan into the tactical plan. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated only those items key to the maneuver plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Allowed for maximum flexibility. The subordinate maneuver commanders determined the type and location of obstacles, consistent with the TFcommander's scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>c. Provided the plan to the maneuver commander and ensured that it was incorporated into the engineer annex.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader consolidates the subordinate unit's obstacle plans into the final (actual) obstacle plan, ensuring that the obstacle locations and types are coordinated with the maneuver- and fire-support plans.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader ensures that the final obstacle plan is complete. The plan should contain--</p> <p>a. The location, type, and special characteristics of each obstacle (including directed obstacles) and all scatterable minefields with self-destruct times (except for MOPMS minefields).</p> <p>b. A timetable and an estimated completion time for obstacles not yet completed.</p> <p>c. The specific orders stating under what conditions and by whose authority the reserve obstacles are to be executed.</p> <p>d. The exact location of the routes and open lanes, according to the tactical and logistical plans, including those specified by higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Changes in the obstacle belts and other adjustments coordinated with the subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1940.20-1001 052-194-4010	Develop an Obstacle Plan SUPERVISE ENGINEER SUPPORT TO ENGAGEMENT AREA DEVELOPMENT
	052-194-4012 052-194-4014	Plan engineer suport to a mobil defense Conduct engineer parralel and colaberative planining
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4008	PREPARE A OBSTACLE PLAN

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** BREACH OBSTACLES (05-3-0004)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver force that is conducting hasty breaching operations. The unit is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver-force commander designates the support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon creates and marks lanes through the obstacles in order to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The platoon creates the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or observed indirect enemy fire. Friendly forces should sustain no casualties when drifting out of the marked lanes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacles from the information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, wire, nuclear weapon, antiairborne, water, beach, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater).</li> <li>b. Determined the obstacles location and the dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and the frontage).</li> <li>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance of the obstacles and the surrounding terrain (as time permitted and when sufficient detailed information was not available).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The platoon leader, in coordination with the task-force commander, determines the best method for breaching the obstacles. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the M9 armored combat earthmover (ACE), the armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB); and other engineer equipment to perform mechanical obstacle breaching.</li> <li>b. Used the M173, M157, or M58A3 mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC), Antipersonnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS) bangalores, or hand-placed charges for explosive obstacle breaching.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Direct or indirect weapons may also be used; however, they require a high expenditure of ammunition.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Used planks, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications during manual obstacle-breaching operations.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader, in coordination with the task-force (TF) commander, determines the lane characteristics. The platoon leader and the TF commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the lane width.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Standard lane widths are 1 meter for a footpath (for personnel only), 4 meters for an initial lane (used to pass assault vehicles), 8 meters for one-way vehicular traffic, and 16 meters for two-way vehicular traffic.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Determined the number of lanes required. The minimum number of lanes for a maneuver company is one and the minimum number of lanes for a TF company is two.</p> <p>c. Determined the lane locations based on the terrain, the cover and concealment for the breaching force, the time and the equipment available for the breach, and the maneuver scheme.</p> <p>4. The platoon clears the obstacle of all mines and booby traps (as required). The platoon--</p> <p>a. Identified the locations or the possible locations of mines, trip wires, and booby traps.</p> <p>b. Neutralized the mines and booby traps using line-charged or hand-placed explosives. Neutralized the mines prior to committing other engineer equipment to the obstacle reduction task.</p> <p>5. The platoon breaches the obstacle and creates the desired lane within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire. No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the platoon is conducting stealth breaching.</p> <p>* 6. The platoon leader directs the ACE operator to employ the ACE (when available) to neutralize the effects of the tank ditches, road craters, tetrahedrons, dragon teeth, and similar obstacles. The ACE operator--</p> <p>a. Started the blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline using small cuts.</p> <p>b. Cut and filled the incline until it was traversable by the maneuver units and the ACE could cross the far bank.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader directs the employment of the AVLB to span the destroyed and disabled bridges and other gaps not exceeding 18.3 meters. The AVLB operator--</p> <p>a. Directed the driver to move the launcher to within 3 meters of the gap.</p> <p>b. Directed the driver to launch the bridge with the scissor cylinder. The far end of the bridge did not exceed 61 centimeters above the surface plain.</p> <p>c. Directed the driver to disconnect the bridge from the launcher (upon completion of the launch).</p> <p>d. Directed the AVLB launcher to the designated position.</p> <p>e. Notified the section sergeant upon completion of the relocation.</p> <p>8. The platoon reduces the log, steel beam-post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools. (See Field Manual [FM] 5-34 for additional information.)</p> <p>9. The platoon reduces the wire obstacles with explosive or assault ladders.</p> <p>10. The platoon removes rubble using engineer equipment or explosives.</p> <p>11. The platoon breaches a tank ditch or other escarpments with pioneer tools (if part of a prebreach operation).</p> <p>12. The platoon marks the cleared lanes. At a minimum, the platoon marks the entrance and exit points of the lanes. The platoon--</p> <p>a. Marked (temporarily) the lanes with any available material.</p> <p>b. Improved the marking as soon as time and the availability of assets permitted (if the lane improvement task was not passed to a follow-on engineer unit). Used the standard minefield marking set #2 or the M133 hand-emplaced minefield-marking set (HEMMS).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Marked the sides of the lanes, when not under enemy fire or as time permitted.  *13. The platoon leader reports the lanes locations to the higher headquarters according to the unit's SOP.  14. The platoon provides guides or performs obstacle hand-over procedures to ensure a smooth flow of traffic through the lanes. The platoon-- a. Provided guide detachments and instructions for the follow-on forces. b. Performed obstacle hand-over procedures according to the unit's SOP. The gaining unit assumed total responsibility for the obstacle(s).  NOTE: Obstacle hand-over procedures enabled the follow-on forces to assume the guide requirement as well as the maintenance and the upgrading of the lane(s).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-1135	LOCATE MINES BY PROBING
	052-192-1234	Operate weapon launched grapnel hook
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING OPERATIONS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**





TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Cratered the roads at the critical points, where there were no easy bypasses (around curves, at the tops of hills, and in towns). Used the M180-demolition kit or cratering charges.</li> <li>d. Created an abatis using explosives or engineer tools in areas where timber at least .6 meters in diameter existed; continued the abatis for a distance of at least 75 meters.</li> <li>e. Placed wrecked or destroyed equipment and materials in the defiles and cuts.</li> <li>f. Destroyed the railroads at vulnerable points such as curves, switches, frogs, and crossovers. Used 1/2-pound explosives for rails less than 12.7 centimeters high and 1-pound explosives for rails over 12.7 centimeters high.</li> <li>g. Destroyed the railway system by destroying a single length of track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used 1-pound charges.</li> <li>(2) Placed the charges on alternate connections of both tracks for a distance of approximately 150 meters.</li> <li>(3) Tamped the charges with sandbags. Additional personnel followed behind at approximately 250 meters and lit the fuses.</li> <li>(4) Repeated the procedures at 2.4-kilometer intervals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon disables or destroys the water transportation system. The platoon--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Blocked the navigation channels by sinking ships or loaded barges and detonating breaching charges behind retaining walls.</li> <li>b. Disabled or the destroyed dams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Destroyed the machinery and equipment.</li> <li>(2) Destroyed the penstocks or the tunnels used to bypass the dam or carry water to the hydroelectric plants.</li> <li>(3) Destroyed the valves or the gates used to control the water flow.</li> <li>(4) Dug ditches or emplaced cratering charges below the existing water level (for earth dams).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Disabled or destroyed canals. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Destroyed the electrical systems and pumps with explosives.</li> <li>(2) Destroyed the lock and canal walls by detonating breaching charges behind them.</li> <li>(3) Destroyed the gates (as time permitted).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon disables or destroys the aviation facilities. The platoon--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disabled or destroyed the runways and taxiways. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Emplaced the M180 demolition kit.</li> <li>(2) Used shaped charges on thick concrete (when time was essential).</li> <li>(3) Placed individual cratering charges diagonally down the runways and taxiways, or in a zigzag line running back and forth, to provide complete destruction.</li> <li>(4) Used 40-pound cratering charges spaced 4.6 meters apart across the runway and buried 1.3 meters deep.</li> <li>(5) Removed pierced steel planks or other types of landing mats by attaching a larger metal hook to sections and pulling it out with a dozer or with other suitable equipment. Followed with cratering.</li> <li>(6) Destroyed bituminous-surface treatments or thin concrete pavements using dozers or graders to dig ditches.</li> <li>(7) Destroyed turf airstrips by plowing or cratering.</li> <li>(8) Strung wire or cable across the runways.</li> <li>(9) Filled 55-gallon drums with sand and placed them on the runways.</li> <li>(10) Placed hulls or debris on the runways.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Destroyed enemy aircraft.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>(1) Placed 4 pounds of trinitrotoluene (TNT) on each crankshaft between the propeller and the engine and 1 pound on the instrument panel.</p> <p>(2) Destroyed the engines of the jet-propelled aircraft by detonating charges placed on essential parts, such as the compressor, the air intake, or the exhaust turbine.</p> <p>(3) Removed or destroyed the radio equipment, bombsights, radar, and tires.</p> <p>8. The platoon destroys the pipelines and the pumping stations. The platoon--</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Destroyed the filled storage tanks by burning with incendiary grenades or a burst of .50 caliber incendiary ammunition.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Destroyed the empty tanks by detonating charges against their bases.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Destroyed the pumping stations by placing gravel in the pipeline or by detonating explosives. Burned the station after detonating the explosives, as time permitted.</p> <p>9. The platoon damages or destroys the communications systems. The platoon--</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Destroyed the telephone and telegraph switchboards by placing 1-pound charges on the cables.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Damaged the pole lines by cutting and burning the poles and cutting the wire into short lengths to prevent further use.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Destroyed the radio installations by--</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Cutting the guy wires, detonating charges against the base, and toppling the tower over the high-voltage transmission line through which the radio received its power.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Destroying the standby-power units and equipment by mechanical means or with explosives.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(3) Destroying transformers with explosives.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader submits a report to the higher headquarters upon completion of the mission or according to the the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	01-1930.10-1001	Monitor the Calculation and Placement of Demolitions and Explosives
	01-1940.20-1001	Develop an Obstacle Plan
	01-2240.20-1001	Coordinate Engineer-Unique Support Logistic Requirements
	01-2250.20-1001	Prepare Engineer Estimates
	01-2250.20-1003	Direct the Employment of Engineers
	01-2250.20-1006	Provide Input to Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	01-2250.20-1008	Advise the Commander on the Use of Terrain for Combat Operations
	052-193-3541	Direct the instalation of booby traps
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1050	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1058	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-2047	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
STP 5-62E12-SM-TG	052-254-1037	CONSTRUCT A DITCH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1052	CONSTRUCT A V DITCH WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1054	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1061	MOVE A LOAD WITH THE SCOOP LOADER CLAMSHELL
STP 5-62N34-SM-TG	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-113-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	05-4-0205	CREATE AN ABATIS

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** EMLACE A TACTICAL MINEFIELD (05-3-0112)  
(FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A platoon is emplacing a minefield in support of a maneuver unit. The location, type, and composition of the minefield have been determined by the maneuver commander. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver unit will provide the security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon emplaces a tactical minefield, tied to existing or reinforced obstacles, to block, canalize, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. The camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to the platoon (includes the task, day or night procedures, observation posts [OPs], and time requirements).</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location. The platoon leader--               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, mine dumps, and approaches.</li> <li>d. Selected the movement routes.</li> <li>e. Established local security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements and arranges for the mines to be drawn. The platoon leader--               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated the number of mines.</li> <li>b. Calculated the number of regular strips (if a standard-pattern minefield).</li> <li>c. Calculated the number of AHDs.</li> <li>d. Determined the strip cluster composition (if a standard-pattern minefield).</li> <li>e. Calculated the number of man-hours required to install the minefield.</li> <li>f. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material.</li> <li>g. Calculated the number of trips necessary to transport the mines.</li> <li>h. Calculated the amount of engineer tape (if a standard-pattern minefield).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader calculates the number of mines and the amount of marking material needed for a scatterable minefield.</li> <li>* 6. The platoon leader reports, by secure means, to higher headquarters the intention to lay mines. The report includes the tactical purpose; the number, type, and location of mines; the type of minefield; if the mines are surface laid or buried; if AHDs are used; the locations of lanes or gaps; and the proposed start and completion times.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to emplace the minefield. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a standard-pattern minefield, to include a-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Siting party, consisting of one noncommissioned officer (NCO) and three enlisted members (EMs).</li> <li>(2) Laying party (three parties), consisting of one NCO and six to eight EMs per party.</li> <li>(3) Recording party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs.</li> <li>(4) Marking party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The personnel breakdown depends on the number of personnel available at the time of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a scatterable minefield, to include-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) A siting party.</li> <li>(2) A loading party.</li> <li>(3) An emplacement party.</li> <li>(4) A marking party.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a row minefield, to include-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel at the mine pickup point.</li> <li>(2) A squad mine-laying party.</li> <li>(3) A siting party.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The size of the parties is determined by the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>* 8. The platoon leader assembles the equipment and materials to emplace the minefield. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the equipment and materials included a map, a lensatic compass, minefield record forms, stakes or pickets, sledge hammers, engineer tape on reels, nails, barb wire on reels, marking signs, lane signs, wire cutters, gauntlets, metric tape, picks, shovels, and sandbags.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The quantity of required equipment and materials will vary depending on the size of the minefield and the number of personnel working.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the equipment for night operations included a hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS) and chemical lights to mark the lanes and the end points of the rows.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The platoon must assume they are being observed by the enemy and maintain noise and light discipline.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leader submits a report to the higher headquarters stating that the unit has initiated mine emplacement. The report includes the time, the location, and the target number.</p> <p>10. The platoon personnel establish a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield. The platoon personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a level site with adequate access for vehicles.</li> <li>b. Decided whether to keep the mines in trailers (mobile mine dumps).</li> <li>c. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart.</li> </ul> <p>11. The platoon personnel emplace the minefield. The platoon personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced a standard-pattern minefield. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The marking party and the siting party performed operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The platoon leader designated a landmark at the rear of the minefield.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) The platoon leader designated the start point of the minefield fence.</li> <li>(c) The marking party, while working in a counterclockwise direction, installed the fence pickets.</li> <li>(d) The siting party laid tape on the centerlines of each strip or row.</li> <li>(e) The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant designated the lanes.</li> <li>(f) The siting party laid tape for the lanes.</li> <li>(g) The siting party augmented the other parties.</li> <li>(2) The recording party conducted operations while the irregular outer edge (IOE) was taped.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The officer in charge (OIC) designated two landmarks.</li> <li>(b) The NCO and the marking party began from one landmark and recorded the azimuths and the distances to the strips and the clusters.</li> <li>(c) The NCO completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355.</li> <li>(d) The platoon leader reviewed DA Form 1355 for correctness and ensured that the form was classified "SECRET" or "NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET".</li> <li>(e) The platoon leader signed the completed DA Form 1355.</li> <li>(f) The platoon leader submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to higher headquarters as soon as possible. The platoon leader retained a copy of the completed DA Form 1355.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) The laying party performed laying-party operations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Established a mine dump upon arrival.</li> <li>(b) Uncrated and stacked the antitank (AT) mines.</li> <li>(c) Removed the lids on the crates containing the remaining mines.</li> <li>(d) Placed the fuses and detonators in separate boxes.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Do not mix the fuse types.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(e) Hauled the base mines to the minefield site.</li> <li>(4) The NCO walked each lettered strip and designated the placement of each base mine (6 meters apart).</li> <li>(5) The laying party followed the NCO and placed the mines as directed. The laying party returned to the mine dump to obtain more mines.</li> <li>(6) The fusing personnel inserted mine fuses, but did not arm the mines.</li> <li>(7) The NCO designated the number and the type of antipersonnel mines to place next to the base mine of each cluster.</li> <li>(8) The NCO placed a spool of trip wire next to the mines to be trip-wire activated.</li> <li>(9) The NCO turned the mines to be equipped with AHDs to an upside-down position.</li> <li>(10) The mine-laying party dug holes for the mines, checked the positioning of the mines, placed the mines next to the hole, placed the soil in a sandbag, and left the mines in the cluster.</li> <li>(11) The mine-laying party anchored trip wires to nails or stakes and wrapped the loose ends around the fuses.</li> <li>(12) The fusing personnel began arming the mines after the digging had progressed at least 25 meters.</li> <li>(13) The fusing personnel placed the mines in the holes, attached the trip wires, armed and camouflaged the mines, beginning with the mines at the farthest point from the centerline and working back.</li> <li>(14) The fusing personnel removed the sandbags and placed them on the centerline of the strip.</li> </ul>		
<p>CAUTION: PERSONNEL NOT INVOLVED IN ARMING THE MINES MUST BE AT LEAST 25 METERS FROM THE FUSING PERSONNEL.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(15) The fusing personnel left the clusters with AHDs unarmed until all clusters within 30 meters had been armed and all personnel had moved a safe distance.</p> <p>(16) The fusing personnel did not arm the mines that were located in the lanes until the lanes were closed.</p> <p>(17) The fusing personnel, upon the completion of arming a strip, gave their safety clips and pins to the NCO.</p> <p>(18) The NCO verified that all mines were fused and camouflaged.</p> <p>(19) The NCO checked the strip to ensure that the platoon had removed the sandbags, tape, and any debris.</p> <p>(20) The platoon sergeant received the safety clips from the NCO and buried them 30 centimeters to the rear of the start-row strip markers.</p> <p>b. Emplaced the scatterable mines (the Modular-Pack Mine System [MOPMS], the wide-area munition [WAM], or the Multiple-Delivery Mine System [Volcano]).</p> <p>(1) The platoon leader designated the landmarks, the dimensions of the minefield, and the location of the minefield fence.</p> <p>(2) The platoon leader designated the traffic and the minefield lanes.</p> <p>(3) The laying party marked the row centerline, spacing at least 60 meters between the belts.</p> <p>(4) The platoon sergeant established a mine dump.</p> <p>(5) The loading party loaded the MOPMS, the WAM, or the Volcano and set the density, the self-destruct time, and the strip width.</p> <p>(6) The laying party drove to the first belt and began dispersing the mines. When crossing the minefield lanes, the crew stopped dispersing mines 5 meters inside the lane and again began dispersing mines 40-50 meters beyond the lane. The laying party ensured that no mines fell into the lanes. The crews continued loading and emplacing the mines until the belts were finished.</p> <p>(7) The marking party emplaced the minefield fence.</p> <p>(8) The platoon leader or the squad leader completed DA Form 1355 and forwarded it according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>c. Emplaced a row minefield.</p> <p>(1) The platoon leader designated the landmarks, minefield dimensions, and minefield-fence locations.</p> <p>(2) The platoon leader designated the minefield lanes and at least three row centerlines. The centerlines had at least 8 meters between them.</p> <p>(3) The marking party marked the centerline.</p> <p>(4) The platoon sergeant established a mine dump.</p> <p>(5) The loading party loaded a vehicle with mines from the dump. The mines were fused but not armed.</p> <p>(6) The laying parties performed operations.</p> <p>(a) The NCO determined the mine spacing.</p> <p>NOTE: A 6-meter rope with a weight (sandbag) on the end may be towed by the laying vehicle to determine the mine spacing. This space will vary depending on the METT-TC.</p> <p>(b) The driver followed the NCO or the row markers.</p> <p>(c) The mines were armed, handed to a layer, and carefully laid from the vehicle. The mines were not buried.</p> <p>(d) The arming party recovered the row markers.</p> <p>(7) The laying party, as time permitted, placed another three rows of mines at least 100 meters behind the first.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(8) The laying party, as time permitted, buried the base mines and added a buried IOE strip, a row of antipersonnel mines, and AHDs. (9) The marking party installed the minefield fence.  *12. The platoon leader completes DA Form 1355 and forwards it according to the unit's SOP.  *13. The platoon leader sends a report of completion, usually orally, to the authorizing commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-2014	DIRECT THE UTILIZATION OF US ANTI-HANDLING DEVICE ON ANTI-TANK MINES
	052-192-3137	DIRECT A ROW MINEFIELD LAYING PARTY
	052-192-3142	DIRECT OPERATION OF A GROUND VOLCANO SYSTEM
	052-192-3165	SUPERVISE INSTALLATION OF A VOLCANO MINEFIELD
	052-192-3166	SUPERVISE INSTALLATION OF MOPMS MINEFIELD
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING OPERATIONS
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.



**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS (05-3-0114)  
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An engineer company is performing continuous tactical operations in the darkness and the daylight, under all weather conditions. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) which has an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company creates lanes through obstacles, as directed by the TF commander, to maintain the momentum of the attack. Friendly forces sustain no casualties while using the marked lanes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-area protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures, with emphasis on preparation for breaching operations. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed and task-organized the platoons to breach the obstacles in support of the attack.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with the company leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood their mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the equipment was checked for serviceability and that the company had the items specified in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) as well as those items required for the specific mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: To support a deliberate attack, an engineer company may require augmentation with the following additional equipment and personnel: an armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), mine-clearing line charges (MICLICs), and up to two additional platoons of personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified engineer required Class V munitions. Requested the munitions through the maneuver unit.</li> <li>f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach and assault forces. Priority went to the breach force.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in combat formation.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The engineer-company's leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>2. The company conducts actions in the assembly area (AA). The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed precombat checks (PCCs) with special emphasis on the breaching equipment.</li> <li>b. Established a linkup with the breach- and assault-force commanders.</li> <li>c. Performed detailed rehearsals with the breach- and assault-force elements.</li> </ul> <p>3. The company moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The company, as directed by the maneuver commander, takes action according to the maneuver-unit's TACSOP.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander positions the subordinate elements well forward and integrates them into the breach- and assault-force combat formations. The commander anticipates the locations or events where engineer support is essential.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer-battlefield assessment (EBA).</p> <p>7. The company supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>* 8. The company commander directs engineer platoons to conduct an enemy-obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or breach the obstacle(s).</p> <p>10. The company supports breach and assault forces. Priority goes to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>*11. The company commander directs the engineer elements supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The elements are prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured a minimum of one lane per assaulting element or two lanes per TF.</li> <li>b. Created a lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel or equipment was exposed to direct or observed indirect fire.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The 10-minute time limit refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for the personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Conducted breaching operations by stealth or at a location where the unit was not under enemy fire. No time standard was established.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The company commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p>13. The company marks lanes according to the unit's TACSOP.</p> <p>*14. The company commander reports the location of lanes according to the unit's TACSOP.</p> <p>15. The company prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>*16. The company commander reports the location of lanes or obstacles to the higher headquarters according to the unit's TACSOP.</p> <p>17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle hand-off.</p> <p>*18. The company commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or obstacle to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit. The lane or obstacle is expediently marked and the marking method is explained to the follow-on engineer unit.</p> <p>19. The company supports the maneuver unit's assault on the objective.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-1135	LOCATE MINES BY PROBING
	052-192-1234	Operate weapon launched grapnel hook
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING OPERATIONS
	052-192-4115	Plan minefield breaching operations
	052-193-3552	Calculate urban breaching charges
	052-193-4120	Supervise urban breaching
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
STP 5-12B1-SM	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-226-1013	RETRIEVE THE ARMORED VEHICLE-LAUNCHED BRIDGE (AVLB): OPERATOR
	052-226-1013	RETRIEVE THE ARMORED VEHICLE-LAUNCHED BRIDGE (AVLB): OPERATOR

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage-of-lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** EMLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0115)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a field environment, an order has been given to emplace a hasty protective row minefield, copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R, M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines. The time to conduct a reconnaissance of the area is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fires. AT mines are placed in order to affect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). AP mines are intermixed with AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The squad leader reports on DA Form 1355-1-R the intention to lay a hasty protective row minefield. NOTE: The report of intention is made as soon as it is decided to lay the minefield. This is the first of three reports and all must be sent in a secure manner. The brigade commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to the battalion or company commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the operation order (OPORD) which is passed to the platoon level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the location of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid.</li> <li>c. Determined whether the mines would be surface-laid or buried.</li> <li>d. Determined the proposed date and time for starting and completing.</li> </ul> <p>2. The tank commander (TC) and the driver remain with the vehicle to provide needed security.</p> <p>3. The TC maneuvers the vehicle using a covered and concealed route to the selected location of the minefield. NOTE: In most situations the squad works together to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>4. If not already there, the TC and the driver move their vehicle to an overwatch position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used cover and concealment.</li> <li>b. Moved into a hull-down position, if possible.</li> <li>c. Covered likely enemy positions.</li> </ul> <p>5. The squad leader and team leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify mine locations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered likely enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Enhanced key weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Covered dead space.</li> <li>d. Could have been seen by the defending elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The squad leader and team leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>7. The squad leader reports the initiation of the minefield.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specified the start time of the mine emplacement.</li> <li>Specified the exact location of the minefield.</li> <li>Specified the target number of the minefield.</li> </ol> <p>8. The squad emplaces the mines.</p> <p>NOTE: The mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used. No booby traps or antihandling devices will be used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP mines is to place them no closer than 4 meters. There is no maximum distance; however, it should not pose any tactical impact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Installed the mines. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Placed the end markers at the end of each row. The markers were labeled with the letter of the row, the number one for one end of the row, and the number two for the other end.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects such as a steel picket.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters. The distance from the row end marker to the first mine in the row is the distance between all of the mines in that row.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emplaced the rows outside of the hand-grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons.</li> <li>Emplaced AT mines so that they would affect likely AAs.</li> <li>Emplaced AP mines so that they were intermixed with AT mines to deny the enemy dismounted AAs. (M18A1 AP mines will be command detonated when NOT used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines will be used in Korea only.) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Buried M21 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed.</li> <li>If time permitted, the rod was camouflaged with brush or tall grass.</li> <li>Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea mines only) up to the bottom of the release pin ring leaving only the pressure prongs above ground. This provided the stability required for proper employment.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>9. The squad leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>NOTE: All measurements will be recorded in meters on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent reference point (RP) in front of his position.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale. The distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield plus 10 meters and divided by four equals the scale. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on the form.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an "A" while "B" and "C" are used for succeeding rows and so on.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row: a number one for one end of the row and a number two for the other end.</li> <li>Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker and record it as "B1." Use "B1" if there are two rows, "C1" if there are three rows, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row which would be "A1" in this case.</p> <p>g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker.</p> <p>NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from "A1" to the first mine to be recorded and then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block of DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to "B2" and from "B2" to "A2."</p> <p>i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark.</p> <p>NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield should it be abandoned.</p> <p>j. Completed the tabular information blocks by specifying the unit and the precise description of the RP, the kind and type of markers used to identify the rows, the map sheet number, the name, the signature of the officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), the time, and the date. Describe how the minefield was measured in the "remarks" block; for example, the minefield was paced out and paces were multiplied by 0.75.</p> <p>10. The squad arms the mines.</p> <p>a. Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side.</p> <p>b. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted.</p> <p>11. The squad leader recovers mine safeties and shipping plugs.</p> <p>a. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container.</p> <p>b. Recorded the items and their location in the "remarks" block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>c. Informed the squad members of the location of DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, and safeties.</p> <p>12. The squad leader reports the completion of laying the minefield.</p> <p>a. Reported to the authorizing commander, by using a secure means, that the minefield had been completed.</p> <p>b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander.</p> <p>13. The squad leader makes sure that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines.</p> <p>14. The squad leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and noncombatants from entering the mined area. If AP mines are used in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.</p> <p>15. The squad leader submits additional reports, as necessary.</p> <p>a. Submitted oral progress reports, during the emplacing process, concerning the amount of work completed.</p> <p>b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if responsibility for a minefield had been altered.</p>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21B 9	01-1940.10-1001	Direct the Construction of Complex Obstacles
No STP and No MOS	052-192-2014	DIRECT THE UTILIZATION OF US ANTI-HANDLING DEVICE ON ANTI-TANK MINES
	052-192-3137	DIRECT A ROW MINEFIELD LAYING PARTY
	052-193-3038	Instal booby traps
	052-193-3541	Direct the instalation of booby traps
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

##### TASK: DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

##### TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

##### TASK: DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0116)  
(FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a field environment, an order has been received from your higher headquarters (HQ) to remove the hasty protective row minefield that your element emplaced within your assigned sector. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are rendered safe and are removed, or accounted for, without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all the mines are disarmed and removed. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield. NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.</p> <p>2. The squad leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond. a. If necessary, the security force employed smoke on the far side to conceal mine removal. b. The security force remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.</p> <p>3. The squad leader determines the best method for removing the mines. a. If the minefield had been under constant observation from the time it was laid and had not been tampered with, the squad leader directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines. The squad leader used Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed. b. If the minefield had not been under constant observation and may have been tampered with, or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines, the squad leader used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed.</p> <p>4. The squad leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and any other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.</p> <p>5. The removal team locates "safeties" and removes the mines within the minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The removal team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to "B1" using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R; then the team moves from "B1" to the mine and removes the mine. If "B1" is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to "B2" using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth from "B2" to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at "A1," "B1," "A2," and "B2" are necessary because it's safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30-meters between removal personnel. Removal personnel did not run and only moved around in cleared areas.</li> <li>b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it.</li> <li>c. Checked the sides and bottoms of the mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Replaced all pins, clips, or other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground.</li> <li>e. If equipped, turned any arming dials to "safe" or "unarmed."</li> <li>f. If the mine had a screw-type fuze, removed the fuze and took it away from the mine. If the detonator was not built-in, the team took the fuze from the mine.</li> <li>g. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on "safe." <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If the mine was put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it, he lifted it directly from the hole after rendering it "safe."</li> <li>(2) If the mine had not been kept in sight, attached a 60-meter long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed.</li> </ul> <p>6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability.</p> <p>7. The squad leader confirms the "safety" of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>NOTE: The squad leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all of the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, make sure it was caused by a land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery is generally elongated.</p> <p>8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use.</p> <p>NOTE: This is honed only after the squad leader confirms each mine has been disarmed and safe.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Repacked mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use.</li> <li>b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use.</p> <p>10. The squad leader submits a report of change to his higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and the maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The squad leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1940.10-1002	Support the Reduction of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.10-1003	Supervise the Clearance of Complex Obstacles
	052-192-1108	REMOVE AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE WITH THE M603 FUZE
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING OPERATIONS
	052-193-3038	Instal booby traps
	052-193-3541	Direct the instalation of booby traps
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
STP 5-12B1-SM	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage-of-lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT MINESWEEPING OPERATIONS (05-3-0118)  
 (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The follow-on forces are preparing to move forward over a designated main supply route (MSR). The maneuver commander directs a route minesweeping operation. The squad is directed to perform the sweep along a route containing enemy mines. The area is secure, but enemy contact with squad-size or smaller elements is possible. The security team is provided.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The squad detects and destroys or removes all mines from the specified route so that there are no friendly casualties to mines within the time standards outlined below. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The squad leader plans the minesweeping operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered intelligence from the platoon leader and the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) concerning the route (any history of mining, booby traps, or disruption to communications).</li> <li>b. Designated the areas to be swept; for example, the natural man-made obstacles, vegetation, communication lines, culverts, and ditches.</li> <li>c. Performed a map reconnaissance of the route, location, length of the sweep, and established checkpoints.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the security team and established a rendezvous point using universal transverse mercator (grid) (UTM) coordinates and time.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The squad leader determines the sweep method.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the hasty minesweeping method (rate is 3 to 5 kph) when the tactical situation did not permit time for a deliberate sweep or the need to open the route was urgent.</li> <li>b. Used the deliberate minesweeping method (rate is 1 to 3 kph), when time was not a factor. Incorporated electronic and visual sweeps of the entire route which were very thorough and time-consuming.</li> <li>c. Used the combination minesweeping method (rate is determined by the amount of the deliberate sweep conducted) when areas of the route required deliberate procedures (history of enemy mining) but not the entire route.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The squad leader briefs the squad and the security element using the five-paragraph order.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the sweep to be conducted (hasty, deliberate, or combination).</li> <li>b. Briefed the organization on the sweep team operation (less personnel are required for the hasty method). Specified column or echelon minesweeping.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Specified the makeup of the sweep team in column minesweeping when the area to be swept had a front less than 2 meters (minimum makeup of one detector or operator, one noncommissioned officer in charge [NCOIC], one mine marker, two demolition men, one relief-detector operator, and one messenger operator or radio operator).</p> <p>(2) Specified the makeup of the sweep team in echelon minesweeping when the area to be swept had a front greater than 2 meters (consists of multiples of one detector operator, one mine marker, one demolition man, and one relief-detector operator--each to cover 2 meters of front).</p> <p>c. Briefed the mission to the security team indicating what actions to take when enemy contact was made and when mines were encountered.</p> <p>d. Briefed safety to all personnel (wear helmets and flak jackets, do not run, move only in cleared areas, assume all mines and booby traps are equipped with antihandling devices (AHDs), and make sure that there is only one person at a mine location at any time).</p> <p>* 4. The squad leader inspects the sweep and security team's equipment.</p> <p>a. Inspected the helmets, load-bearing equipment (LBE), weapons, and flak jackets for serviceability and fit.</p> <p>b. Inspected the mine detectors for operation and determined the availability of additional detectors.</p> <p>c. Inspected the communications equipment for operation and secure mode. Performed a communications check.</p> <p>d. Inspected vehicles for sandbagged floors and beds.</p> <p>e. Checked for 1-pound blocks of explosives, detonating cord, time fuse, and blasting caps.</p> <p>f. Inspected the grapnel hooks, rope, and wire for serviceability.</p> <p>g. Inspected nonmetallic probes for serviceability.</p> <p>5. The squad conducts minesweeping operations.</p> <p>* 6. The security team supports the sweep team.</p> <p>a. Positioned themselves according to mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>b. Supported the sweep team upon enemy contact.</p> <p>c. Ensured the safety of the sweep team.</p> <p>d. Watched for trip wires and booby traps.</p> <p>* 7. The squad reacts to emergency situations.</p> <p>a. Reacted to enemy attack.</p> <p>b. Ceased all operations when members located mines and alerted the security team. Pinpointed the mine location while remaining alert for any booby traps and AHDs, identified the mines, and notified higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>8. The squad operates the mine detectors and sweeps the route.</p> <p>9. The squad leader ensures that the detector operators are relieved every 20 minutes.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the detector operators were at least 8 meters apart when conducting a sweep.</p> <p>b. Swept a 2-meter front for each detector.</p> <p>10. The squad probes to locate mines.</p> <p>a. Used the probes to confirm the exact location of mines.</p> <p>b. Probed every 5 centimeters across a 1-meter front.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Probed gently into the ground at an angle less than 45 degrees from the horizontal.</p> <p>d. Pushed the probe with just enough pressure so it sank slowly into the ground.</p> <p>e. Stopped probing as soon as resistance was encountered.</p> <p>f. Used the tip of the probe and hands to remove soil to identify the object. If the object was a mine, removed enough soil to show the mine type and then marked its location.</p> <p>11. The squad destroys or removes mines.</p> <p>12. The officer in charge (OIC) determines if the mines will be destroyed.</p> <p>a. Destroyed the mines by placing a demolition block next to each mine.</p> <p>b. Removed the mines with a grapnel hook and a rope or wire.</p> <p>c. Notified explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel of enemy mines. The friendly mines with AHDs or booby traps were neutralized by hand.</p> <p>13. The squad verifies that the route is cleared.</p> <p>a. Used a tank-mounted roller when available.</p> <p>b. Used an expedient method. Prepared a 2 1/2-ton (or larger) vehicle by placing sandbags on the floor and cargo compartment, and removed the cab shield (headache board). Then slowly backed the vehicle over the entire route.</p> <p>14. The squad leader submits reports according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>a. Submitted a spot report (SPOTREP) if any mines or booby traps were detected.</p> <p>b. Submitted the work status or completion reports as required to ensure that the commanders were aware of the changes.</p> <p>c. Submitted mine or booby trap incident reports. Each incident was documented and forwarded through intelligence channels at the end of the operation.</p> <p>15. The squad leader briefs the platoon leader, the platoon sergeant, and the commander upon completion of the mission.</p> <p>16. The squad leader ensures that the maintenance is performed and the equipment is stored.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1940.10-1002	Support the Reduction of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.10-1003	Supervise the Clearance of Complex Obstacles

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	01-1940.20-1002	Direct the Reduction of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.20-1003	Direct the Clearance of Complex Obstacles
	052-192-1127	PREPARE AN AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1128	LOCATE MINES WITH THE AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-3060	CONDUCT A BREACH OF A MINEFIELD
	052-192-4045	CONDUCT ROUTE SWEEP OPERATIONS
	052-192-4115	Plan minefield breaching operations
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
STP 21-24-SMCT	052-193-1013	NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS
STP 5-12B1-SM	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
	052-192-3034	DIRECT A DELIBERATE MINEFIELD RECONNAISSANCE PATROL
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-192-4046	CONDUCT AN ASSAULT BREACH OF A MINEFIELD
	052-192-4052	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD CLEARING OPERATIONS
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
	052-192-3034	DIRECT A DELIBERATE MINEFIELD RECONNAISSANCE PATROL
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-192-4046	CONDUCT AN ASSAULT BREACH OF A MINEFIELD
STP 5-62N34-SM-TG	052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** EMLACE A STANDARDIZED TACTICAL ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0119.05-R01A)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield. The maneuver commander has determined the location, the type, and the composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver commander will provide the security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces a standardized tactical row minefield tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The element submits reports and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. The element completes the minefield within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the route and the terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted a risk-management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit's TACSOP or the SOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps.</li> <li>d. Selected movement routes.</li> <li>e. Established local security.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: For additional information on weapons ranges refer to Field Manual (FM) 20-32.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader calculates logistical requirements needed for the standardized row minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated for disrupted and fixed standardized row minefields.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Row "A" had--                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) 42 full-width antitank (AT) mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>( b ) No turning points</li> <li>( c ) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Row "B" had--</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Start and end markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 42 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) Three or less turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(3) Row "C" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 42 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(4) Irregular outer edge (IOE) on a fix minefield had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Three IOE short rows.</li> <li>(b) A separate IOE baseline.</li> <li>(c) An IOE baseline on the enemy side that was 15 meters from row "A."</li> <li>(d) Seven full-width AT mines on each IOE short row which are placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(e) Buried mines.</li> <li>(f) The first IOE short row placed 48 meters from the IOE end marker, the second short row placed 84 meters from the first short row, and the third short row placed 84 meters from the second short row.</li> </ul> <p>b. Turned standardized row minefield.</p> <p>(1) Row "A" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(b) No turning points</li> <li>(c) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(2) Row "B" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Start and end row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) Five or less turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(3) Row "C" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(4) Row "D" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "C."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(5) Row "E" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Start and end row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "D."</li> <li>(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) Five or less turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>(6) Row "F" had--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "D."</li> <li>(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ul> <p>c. Blocked standardized row minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: A block minefield has an IOE (Korea Only: and antipersonnel [AP] mines) and has 20 percent AHDs in two of its rows of full-width mines. AHDs are placed in rows "B" and "C" for the best effect. (Korea Only: a block minefield also requires a density of 0.17 of M16 or M14 AP mines per linear meter of depth which is approximately 84 M16 or M14 mines.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Row "A" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(b) No turning points.</li> <li>(c) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Row "B" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Start and end-row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) Five or less turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(3) Row "C" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(4) Row "D" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "C."</li> <li>(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(5) Row "E" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Start and end-row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "D."</li> <li>(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) Five or less turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(6) Row "F" had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "D."</li> <li>(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.</li> <li>(c) No turning points.</li> <li>(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(7) IOE had-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Six IOE short rows.</li> <li>(b) A separate IOE baseline.</li> <li>(c) Seven full-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart on each IOE short row.</li> <li>(d) Buried mines.</li> <li>(e) The first IOE short row placed 72 meters from the IOE end marker, and the five subsequent IOE short rows placed at 72-meter intervals on the baseline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(8) Korea Only: AP mines. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Placed two rows of full-width AT mines.</li> <li>(b) Placed in a cluster around AT mines.</li> <li>(c) Placed in front of every other AT mine (one per AT mine).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 4. The element leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements (if standard-row minefield designs are not used) and arranges for the mines to be drawn.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated the number of mines.</li> <li>b. Calculated the number of rows (depending on the effect).</li> <li>c. Calculated the number of AHDs.</li> <li>d. Calculated the number of man-hours needed to install the minefield.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material.                      f. Calculated the number of trips needed to transport the mines.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reports, by secure means, to the higher headquarters (HQ) or supported maneuver unit HQ, the intention to lay mines (if required).</p> <p>a. Reported the tactical purpose.                      b. Reported the number and type of mines.                      c. Reported the intended locations.                      d. Reported the type of the minefield.                      e. Reported the mines that were to be surface-laid or buried.                      f. Reported that AHDs were used.                      g. Reported the location and the width of lanes and gaps.                      h. Reported the proposed start and completion times.</p> <p>* 6. To emplace the minefield, the element leader or the subordinate leaders organize the element into four parties: siting and recording, laying, marking, and mine dump.</p> <p>a. Organized the siting and recording party which consisted of an element leader and two enlisted members (EM).                      b. Organized the laying party which consisted of one subordinate leader and four EMs. There were three separate teams of laying personnel. Each team had a vehicle (if available).                      c. Organized the marking party which consisted of one subordinate leader and was composed of element personnel who were not members of other teams.                      d. Organized the mine-dump party which consisted of one subordinate leader and was composed of element personnel who were not members of other teams.</p> <p>NOTE: The personnel breakdown varies depending on the number of personnel available at the time of the mission.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader or the subordinate leaders supervise the assembly of all equipment and material to emplace the minefield during the daylight or with limited visibility.</p> <p>NOTE: The quantity of equipment and material required may vary depending on the size of the minefield and the number of personnel working. The element must assume the enemy is observing them and maintain noise and light discipline.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to higher HQ or supported maneuver unit HQ that the element has initiated emplacement. The report includes the time, the location, and the target number.</p> <p>9. The element establishes a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield.</p> <p>a. Selected a reasonably level site with adequate access for vehicles.                      b. Decided whether to keep the mines in trailers (mobile mine dump).                      c. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart and 50 meters behind the minefield. Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) was moved accordingly, as needed.</p> <p>NOTE: The battlefield situation and the resupply techniques will dictate if a mine dump is used or not.</p> <p>d. Uncrated and stacked the AT mines.                      e. Removed the lids on the remaining mine crates; but did not remove the additional mines from the crates.                      f. Placed the fuzes and the detonators in separate boxes.</p> <p>NOTE: Do not mix the fuze types.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*10. The siting and recording party performs operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected landmark 1 and sited the left (or right) boundary fence and the start row markers.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: All the start and end row markers are permanent markers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Recorded the distances and the azimuths used in preparing DA Form 1355.</li> <li>c. Proceeded across the IOE and established I1, I1E, I2, I2E, and so on until reaching the end.</li> <li>d. Proceeded down the right (or left) boundary fence and emplaced the A1 start row marker. Proceeded from A1 to A2 then placed the intermediate markers, as needed, and ended with the end row marker at A2.</li> <li>e. Designated the minefield lanes and at least three rows. The rows should have at least 8 meters between them.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The rows with antipersonnel mines should have at least 15 meters between them (Korea only).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Repeated procedure in Task Step 10d to emplace B1 to B2, C1 to C2, and so on until all of the required control measures were emplaced.</li> <li>g. Established landmark 2 and the left (or right) rear fence.</li> </ul> <p>11. The marking party emplaces the fence post, the wire, and the marking signs.</p> <p>12. The laying party performs operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled a guide for mine spacing.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: For a guide use a rope with a weight (sandbag) on the end and tow it with the laying vehicle. The rope should be 4-10 meters long depending on the mine spacing to be used in the row. The element leader determines the spacing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Proceeded down the row in the vehicle following the shotgun/track commander (TC) or the intermediate row markers.</li> <li>c. Transferred the mines from the vehicle and carefully laid them on the ground.</li> <li>d. Fuzed the mines.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The mines can be fuzed while inside the vehicle or after they are laid on the ground.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Armed the mines and recovered the row markers.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: If the minefield is a buried minefield, bury the mines prior to arming them.</p> <p>13. The marking party installs the minefield fence.</p> <p>14. A subordinated leader completes a DA Form 1355 with the required information.</p> <p>*15. The element leader submits a minimum of four copies of a completed DA Form 1355 according to the unit's TACSOP or the SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the DA Form 1355 for correctness, ensured that the form was marked with the correct classification, and signed the form.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The DA Form 1355 should be marked with one of the following classifications: SECRET or NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET, SECRET- Republic of Korea, United States (ROKUS), or SAMPLE.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the overwatch unit and the higher HQ, or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible.</li> <li>c. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the unit's central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority.</li> </ul> <p>*16. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually an oral report, to the authorizing commander and then immediately submits a completed DA Form 1355.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-2014	DIRECT THE UTILIZATION OF US ANTI-HANDLING DEVICE ON ANTI-TANK MINES
	052-192-3137	DIRECT A ROW MINEFIELD LAYING PARTY
	052-193-3541	Direct the instalation of booby traps
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
STP 5-12B1-SM	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-4008	PREPARE A OBSTACLE PLAN
	052-192-1105	INSTALL AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE USING THE M624 FUZE
	052-192-1106	REMOVE AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE WITH THE M624 FUZE
	052-192-1107	INSTALL AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE USING THE M603 FUZE
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-1109	INSTALL AN M19 ANTITANK (AT) MINE
	052-192-1117	INSTALL AN M21 ANTITANK (AT) MINE
	052-192-1105	INSTALL AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE USING THE M624 FUZE
	052-192-1106	REMOVE AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE WITH THE M624 FUZE
	052-192-1107	INSTALL AN M15 ANTITANK (AT) MINE USING THE M603 FUZE
	052-192-1109	INSTALL AN M19 ANTITANK (AT) MINE
	052-192-1117	INSTALL AN M21 ANTITANK (AT) MINE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01D	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP	05-3-1018.05-R01A	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CREATE A CRATER OBSTACLE WITH EXPLOSIVES (05-3-0201)  
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to create a crater obstacle. A target reconnaissance has been conducted and the reconnaissance report is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates a crater obstacle within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The crater is a minimum of 1.8 meters deep and 6 meters wide, and the side slopes are a minimum of 25 degrees. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included a plan and a side-view sketch showing overall dimensions and lines of cut.</li> <li>b. Included the location, depth, and quantity of explosives for each borehole as well as the method of ignition for each row of craters planned.</li> <li>c. Included a sketch showing firing circuits and firing points.</li> <li>d. Included a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types required, a list of required equipment, and an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare and fire the demolition.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element picks up all materials and equipment needed for the demolition.</p> <p>3. The element prepares demolitions in the rear to minimize the time on site; for example, cutting branch lines and priming blocks of explosives with detonating cord.</p> <p>NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear.</p> <p>4. The element leader issues orders to the element using the five-paragraph field order format.</p> <p>5. The element leader briefs each man on the site security, noise and light, discipline, and each member's specific tasks.</p> <p>6. The element moves to the obstacle location.</p> <p>7. The element places the shaped charges in locations identified by the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct and/or indirect fire and is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The element connects the branch lines to the ring main and then primes the shaped charges.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Did not dual-prime the shaped charges.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-Hooks).</li> <li>c. Primed the shaped charges using M11s or M16s.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the single-primed shaped charges were dual-initiated.</li> </ol> <p>9. The element detonates the shape charges.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Attached the dual-initiation system to the detonating cord.</li> <li>b. All element members were a safe distance away.</li> </ol> <p>10. The element prepares the holes blown by shaped charges to achieve the correct depth for the crater being employed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all the holes for a hasty crater were 1.5 meters deep.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the holes for a deliberate crater were alternately 1.5 meters and 2 meters deep, with 2-meter holes on both ends.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the enemy row of a relieved face crater had 1.3-meter holes and the friendly row had 1.5-meter holes.</li> </ol> <p>11. The element dual primes all boreholes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. In holes with only one cratering charge (1.5 meters deep), dual primed by placing a primed package of composition C4 (C4) on the placement indicator marks and a second package of C4 parallel on the opposite side of the cratering charge and flush with the top. Reference Field Manual (FM) 5-250.</li> <li>b. In holes with two cratering charges, primed both crater charges by placing a primed package of C4 on the placement indicator marks. When placing the cratering charge in the borehole, ensured that the packages of C4 were on opposite sides of each other. Reference FM 5-250.</li> </ol> <p>12. The element lays the ring mains and ties in the branch lines with demolition knots or J-Hooks.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that two ring mains were required for each row of holes. On relieved-face craters, the friendly-row ring mains were covered with 15 centimeters of earth to prevent the detonating cord from being cut when the enemy row was detonated.</li> <li>b. Ensured that each system was independent.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and the branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-Hooks.).</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: If traffic must pass over the site prior to detonation, the branch lines and the ring mains are placed in 15-centimeter deep trenches, covered with a "U" shaped picket, and backfilled with earth.</p> <p>13. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and detonate.</p> <p>14. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a preliminary target) and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. Permission may have been given to execute the target upon completion. In that case the target is brought to state 2 and detonated.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*15. Prior to firing, the element leader may hand over the target to a demolition-firing party. Whenever possible, the hand-over procedures are as detailed as those in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See FM 5-250.</p> <p>16. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ. If authority is given, improves the obstacle by laying the mines.</p> <p>a. Recorded the mines on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355.</p> <p>b. Placed the mines at enemy side approaches first, followed by the gap between the first and second lines of cut on the enemy side.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DISABLE A BRIDGE WITH EXPLOSIVES (05-3-0202)  
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34) (TM 9-1300-214)  
(TM 9-1375-213-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to execute a preliminary (as opposed to reserve) bridge demolition. A target reconnaissance has been conducted and DA Form 2203-R is available. The gap is at least 25 meters wide. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prepares the bridge for demolition within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. On order, the squad executes the demolition of the bridge to block or delay the enemy. The obstacle stops or delays all enemy wheeled and tracked vehicles. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains the following technical information from the reconnaissance report:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained sketches of the target showing how and where to place the charges.</li> <li>b. Obtained the quantities and type of explosives required for each charge and the total mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a sketch of the firing points.</li> <li>d. Obtained estimates of the time, labor, and equipment requirements for the demolition mission.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element draws the explosives and any of the additional tools or equipment according to the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear.</p> <p>* 3. Using the five-paragraph field-order format, the element leader issues orders to the element detailing each soldier's job. Covers site security as well as noise and light discipline.</p> <p>4. The element moves to the bridge location.</p> <p>5. The crew assembles and places the charges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled the charges in the rear area to minimize the time spent on the bridge, when possible.</li> <li>b. Placed the correctly sized charges on the members to be cut according to the information contained in the reconnaissance report.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element lays the ring mains. Ties in the branch lines with demolition knots or J-Hooks.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-Hooks).</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>NOTE: J-Hooks are used in conjunction with modernized demolition initiator (MDI) systems.</p> <p>7. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. (In the event that permission has been given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated).</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader may hand over the target to a demolition firing party before firing. The hand-over procedures are as detailed as those found in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See Field Manual (FM) 5-250.</p> <p>8. If the element fires the demolition only one soldier, with an noncommissioned officer (NCO) supervising, connects the blasting caps to the ring mains.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. All remaining element members were a safe distance away. See FM 5-34 or FM 5-250.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and demolition results to higher HQ.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Improves the obstacle by laying mines on enemy-side approaches and on possible bypass or bridge sites.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Records the mines on DA Form 1355.</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1930.10-1001	Monitor the Calculation and Placement of Demolitions and Explosives
	052-193-3024	CALCULATE BREACHING CHARGES
	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-193-3551	CALCULATE ABUTMENT DESTRUCTION
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	STP 5-62N34-SM-TG	052-256-3034

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**



**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE PRECONSTRUCTED OBSTACLES (05-3-0204)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-102)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The squad leader is issued an obstacle folder and directed to emplace the obstacle. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The squad prepares prechamber shafts, beam-post obstacles, or bridges in exact compliance with the obstacle folder for turnover or execution. The squad completes a three-shaft prechamber obstacle in 90 minutes. The squad completes a 54-beam-post obstacle in four hours. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The squad prepares a prechamber shaft according to the standards or criteria outlined in the obstacle folder.</li> <li>2. The squad leader draws the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.</li> <li>3. The squad leader obtains special tools (T-handle wrenches, shaft-cover lifting hooks, and loading poles) listed in the folder. The crew--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Opened the prechamber shaft nearest the enemy first.</li> <li>b. Loaded each prechamber shaft with 25-kilogram DM41 charges (four per meter of shaft depth).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The DM41 charge is designed to fit European prechamber shafts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Dual-primed the last charge in each shaft.</li> <li>d. Installed the firing system by using existing plastic lines to pull the branch lines through the conduits.</li> <li>e. Laid ring mains along the side of the road.</li> </ol> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. The squad leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader/sergeant.</li> <li>5. The squad completes a three-shaft system in 90 minutes.</li> <li>6. The squad prepares a beam-post obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder. The squad leader --               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drew the required steel I-beams.</li> <li>b. Located special tools (T-handle wrenches and lifting hooks) identified in the folder.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The crew opens the shaft covers and removes the crossbar beginning with the enemy row.</li> <li>8. A section carries an I-beam and lowers it into the shaft, enemy row first.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The squad may improve the enemy-side double row by placing two rolls of concertina, one on top of the other, over each row of beams. They position a camouflage net over the entire double row.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The squad completes 3 double rows that are 12 meters wide (54 I-beams) in 4 hours. Reports the intermediate status and completion to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>10. The squad leader completes the obstacle folder and submits it to the platoon leader/sergeant.</p> <p>11. The squad prepares a bridge for demolition as directed in the obstacle folder. The squad leader --</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the location of the required demolition material and drew it.</li> <li>b. Located any special tools identified in the folder.</li> </ul> <p>12. The crew places charges as directed in the obstacle folder and prepares the firing systems. If dual-primed, ensure that each system is independent.</p> <p>13. The squad prepares the demolition target.</p> <p>14. The squad members prepare the demolition target to state 1, if it is a preliminary target, and advise higher HQ that they are ready to execute the target. If permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed.</p> <p>15. The squad leader, following procedures in the obstacle folder, may turn over the target to a demolition firing party.</p> <p>16. If the squad executes the target, follow the procedures outlined in STANAG 2123.</p> <p>17. The squad leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ. He may improve the obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder; for example, laying mines.</p> <p>18. The squad leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader/sergeant.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-195-4050	PREPARE ENGINEER ESTIMATES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** DISABLE CRITICAL EQUIPMENT/MATERIAL (05-3-0210)  
(FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
(TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy assault penetrates the platoon position. The platoon leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable those items that the platoon cannot haul or move. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked/wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and any of the communications equipment.</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets (such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers).</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or an other cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling the communication equipment and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all the dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all the antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable the communication equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader determines the amount of barrier material (the mines, the wire, and the explosives) to use and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</li> <li>b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive.</li> <li>c. Considered whether to use an electric or a nonelectric firing system.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces.  6. The platoon's members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the platoon leader's plan.  * 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-1310	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION FIRING SYSTEMS
	052-193-1311	PRIME MILITARY EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-1312	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION INITIATING SETS
	052-193-1313	IDENTIFY CHARACTERISTICS OF MILITARY DEMOLITIONS AND EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-2014	DETERMINE SAFE DISTANCE WHEN FIRING EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-2016	PLACE STEEL-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-2030	CLEAR MISFIRES
	052-193-3023	CALCULATE STEEL-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-3054	PREPARE A DEMOLITION RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-193-4040	SUPERVISE ENGINEER DEMOLITION MISSIONS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	052-256-3066	DIRECT THE EMERGENCY DESTRUCTION OF EQUIPMENT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT WIRE OBSTACLES (05-3-0303.05-R01A)  
(FM 5-34) (ARTEP 5-145-DRILL) (FM 20-32)  
(FM 5-102) (FM 90-7)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to construct a wire obstacle at an 8-digit grid location to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. The element has the materials available to construct the wire obstacle. The wire obstacles may be emplaced as tactical or protective obstacles. This task is always performed in MOPPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces the obstacle to standard according to higher headquarters (HQ) requirements (tactical [disrupt, fix, turn, or block] or protective) and timeline. The element sites and constructs the obstacle, performs an obstacle turn over, and reports to higher HQ or supported maneuver unit HQ. The element completes the wire obstacle within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to construct a wire obstacle to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the route and the terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the wire obstacle.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted a risk-management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit's SOP or the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares to construct a wire obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the site to consider needed security, potential actions on contact, and the accessibility of materials.</li> <li>b. Organized the work party.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader and overwatch unit site the obstacle as part of the overwatch unit engagement area (EA) development process. NOTE: Cover the obstacle with direct and/or indirect fire.</p> <p>4. The element constructs the wire obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used triple standard concertina. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side.</li> <li>(2) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: 1 meter equals 1.3 paces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Staggered the rear row.</li> <li>(4) Secured the bottom rolls with horizontal wire on both the enemy side and the friendly side.</li> <li>(5) Anchored the horizontal wire to the anchor (short) pickets, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from the end of the (long) picket.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Secured the top roll, the horizontal wire, and the bottom roll on the friendly side with wire ties midway between pickets.</p> <p>(7) Completed construction within the time standard.</p> <p>NOTE: The time standard is 1squad hour per 100 meters during the daylight and 1.5 squad hours per 100 meters in the darkness.</p> <p>b. Prepared the knife rest.</p> <p>(1) Prepared a knife rest 3 to 5 meters long.</p> <p>(2) Secured the knife rest to the ground 3 to 5 meters between the cross members with a minimum height of 1.2 meters and tightly lashed together.</p> <p>(3) Completed construction within the time standard.</p> <p>NOTE: The time standard is 1squad hour per knife rest during the daylight and 1.5 squad hours per knife rest in the darkness.</p> <p>c. Prepared a double-apron 4-2 pace.</p> <p>(1) Laid the fence centerline.</p> <p>(2) Spaced the long pickets at 3-meter (4-pace) intervals.</p> <p>(3) Spaced the anchor pickets 1.5 meters (2-paces) in each direction away from the centerline and midway between the long pickets.</p> <p>(4) Installed all 12 wires working from the enemy side to the friendly side.</p> <p>NOTE: No antitank mines should be placed in the fence.</p> <p>(5) Used the correct wire ties and ensured that all of the wires were tight.</p> <p>(6) Completed construction within the time standard.</p> <p>NOTE: The time standard is 3 squad hours per 100 meters during the daylight and 4.5 squad hours per 100 meters in the darkness.</p> <p>d. Constructed an eleven-row antivehicular wire obstacle.</p> <p>(1) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals.</p> <p>(2) Placed the concertina wire over the long pickets and placed a 20-centimeter-diameter log between the 5th and the 6th row.</p> <p>(3) Anchored the horizontal wires to the anchor stakes, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from each end of the concertina.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that the obstacle was no less than 10 meters deep (11 rows).</p> <p>(5) Completed construction within the time standard (for every entanglement, 15-meters (17 yards) wide and 10 meters deep (11 rows) is 1squad hour during the daylight and 2 squad hours during the darkness).</p> <p>NOTE: The time standard for every entanglement is 15 meters wide and 10 meters deep (11 rows) which allows 1squad hour during daytime and 2 squad hours during darkness.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader submits the initiation reports, the status updates, and the completion reports to higher HQ according to the unit's SOP or the TACSOP.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader conducts an obstacle turnover to the overwatch unit IAW the unit's SOP or TACSOP.</p> <p>NOTE: Refer to FM 20-32 for information on how to prepare an obstacle turnover checklist.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER
	052-193-3541	Direct the instalation of booby traps
	052-195-1020	INSTALL WIRE OBSTACLE MATERIALS
	052-195-2101	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF WIRE ENTANGLEMENTS
	052-195-3066	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF NONEXPLOSIVE OBSTACLES
	052-195-3067	DETERMINE LOGISTICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WIRE OBSTACLES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS (05-3-0304)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is supporting a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The platoon has organic equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs vehicle fighting positions providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapon system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of the positions.</p> <p>* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the maneuver-unit vehicles and the positions required; he uses the unit's planning factors to estimate the completion time.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes construction based on the directives from the maneuver commander.</p> <p>4. The platoon constructs the positions in the order of the commander's priorities.</p> <p>a. Prepared hasty positions for the fighting vehicles. Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from the high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provided limited concealment.</p> <p>(1) Excavated and built up a frontal parapet as high as practical without interfering with the vehicle's weapon system.</p> <p>(2) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the vehicle sides.</p> <p>(3) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions, as time permitted.</p> <p>b. Prepared deliberate positions for fighting vehicles to protect them from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (for example, the SABOT). See FM 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles.</p> <p>(1) Constructed positions in four parts.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade.</p> <p>(a) Constructed a hull defilade.</p> <p>(b) Constructed a concealed access ramp or route.</p> <p>(c) Constructed a hide location.</p> <p>(d) Constructed a turret defilade.</p> <p>(2) Flattened out or hauled away the spoil.</p> <p>(3) Adjusted position depths listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain; for example, the position depth on a reverse slope will not be as great as on level ground.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Ensured that the position suited the vehicle's requirements by driving the vehicle into the position at various stages of construction.		
* 5. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1362	CAMOUFLAGE EQUIPMENT
	052-195-2000	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN FIELD
	052-195-2010	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN URBAN TERRAIN
	052-195-4009	DETERMINE LOGISTICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR NONEXPLOSIVE ANTIVEHICULAR OBSTACLES
	052-195-4050	PREPARE ENGINEER ESTIMATES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-225-3305	ESTIMATE REQUIREMENTS FOR VEHICLES FIGHTING POSITIONS
	052-227-1103	OPERATE THE WINCH OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1106	OPERATE A FIXED FIRE EXTINGUISHER ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1110	UNFOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1111	FOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1225	DRIVE AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1226	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-227-1233	PERFORM FORDING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1241	HANDLE PALLETIZED CARGO WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1250	CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-254-1039	EXCAVATE A HULL DEFILADE POSITION WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1040	SPREAD A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1042	LEVEL FILL MATERIAL IN A FILL AREA WITH THE ANGLE BLADE OF THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DISRUPT CONSTRUCTION OF VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT VEHICLE PROTECTIVE POSITIONS (05-3-0305)  
(FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon supports a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The platoon has organic equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs vehicle positions providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver-unit vehicles requiring positions. See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.</li> <li>4. The platoon reports the intermediate status and the completion of the construction to higher headquarters (HQ).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the parapet positions for field artillery or for air-defense artillery (ADA) weapons.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation. Built it low enough so that it allowed direct howitzer fire or so that it did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons.</li> <li>(2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather.</li> <li>(3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the positions were the correct length, the correct width, the correct depth, and the correct parapet thickness. See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Prepared the deep-cut vehicle positions for protection of the support vehicles.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned the vehicles so the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the surrounding wall-rim top.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the positions, opened on both ends, with an optional rear wall.</li> <li>(3) Placed the camouflage netting across the top of the position.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the positions were the correct dimensions (length, width, and depth) according to FM 5-103.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The platoon leader reports mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1362	CAMOUFLAGE EQUIPMENT
	052-195-2000	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN FIELD
	052-195-2010	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN URBAN TERRAIN
	052-195-4009	DETERMINE LOGISTICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR NONEXPLOSIVE ANTIVEHICULAR OBSTACLES
	052-195-4050	PREPARE ENGINEER ESTIMATES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-225-3305	ESTIMATE REQUIREMENTS FOR VEHICLES FIGHTING POSITIONS
	052-227-1005	PERFORM OPERATOR PREVENTIVE-MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1103	OPERATE THE WINCH OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1106	OPERATE A FIXED FIRE EXTINGUISHER ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1110	UNFOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1111	FOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1225	DRIVE AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1226	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-227-1233	PERFORM FORDING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1241	HANDLE PALLETIZED CARGO WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1250	CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-254-1037	CONSTRUCT A DITCH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1038	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1039	EXCAVATE A HULL DEFILADE POSITION WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1040	SPREAD A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1041	BACKFILL MATERIAL AROUND A BELOW-GROUND STRUCTURE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1042	LEVEL FILL MATERIAL IN A FILL AREA WITH THE ANGLE BLADE OF THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1057	BACKFILL WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1063	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-2041	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2047	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3044	DIRECT MOTORIZED SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT CONSTRUCTION OF VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT A TANK DITCH (05-3-0306)  
(FM 5-102) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is supporting a maneuver unit establishing a defense. The obstacle plan requires construction of a tank ditch as part of a linear-obstacle system. The maneuver unit occupies defensive positions overlooking an ideal engagement area. The unit has all organic equipment. The maneuver commander has selected the site in consultation with the engineer. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crew constructs a tank ditch tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block, turn, fix, or disrupt the enemy. The tank ditch blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT) for 2 minutes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The crew leader coordinates with the maneuver commander for the location of the tank ditch to support the maneuver scheme, enhance antitank (AT) fire, and establish jobsite security.</li> <li>* 2. The crew leader conducts a reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the tank ditch was within the maximum effective range of AT firing positions.</li> <li>b. Sited the tank ditch so that the ends of the ditch tied into existing obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the best method for digging according to Field Manual (FM) 5-102.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The crew leader briefs the crew on routes, security, action on contact, and noise and light discipline.</li> <li>4. The crew performs vehicle maintenance.</li> <li>* 5. The crew leader supervises tank-ditch construction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the ditch location.</li> <li>b. Briefed the operators on the type of tank ditch, the starting and ending points, the depth of the ditch, and the enemy and friendly sides of the ditch.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. The operators construct a rectangular tank ditch a minimum of 1.5 meters deep and 3.3 meters wide. They place the berm on the friendly side of the ditch.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the T-push method with a dozer/dozer, dozer/loader, dozer/armored combat earthmover (ACE), ACE/ACE, or ACE/loader team configuration.</li> <li>b. Used the tandem method with a scraper/scraper, scraper/ACE, or scraper/dozer team configuration.</li> <li>c. Constructed the tank ditch within time standards. See FM 5-102.</li> </ul> </li> <li>7. The operators construct a triangular tank ditch a minimum of 1.5 meters deep and 4 meters wide. They spread the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the T-push method. See Subtask 6a.</li> <li>b. Constructed the tank ditch within time standards. See FM 5-102.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. The operators construct a sidehill-cut tank ditch a minimum of 1.5 meters deep and 4.5 to 6 meters wide. They spread the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the T-push method. See Subtask 6a.</li> <li>b. Used the one-dozer or ACE method.</li> <li>c. Constructed the tank ditch within time standards. See FM 5-102.</li> </ul>		
* 9. The crew leader reports the completion to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-3066	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF NONEXPLOSIVE OBSTACLES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3301	ESTIMATE TANK DITCH PRODUCTION REQUIREMENTS
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-254-1036	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1037	CONSTRUCT A DITCH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1043	PUSH LOAD THE SCRAPER WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1063	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1069	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1070	Spread Fill Material with a Motorized Scraper
	052-254-2041	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2047	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-256-3037	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF AN ANTITANK DITCH
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3044	DIRECT MOTORIZED SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.



**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT A LOG OBSTACLE (05-3-0307)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The maneuver commander orders the construction of log obstacles to support the defensive scheme. Intelligence reports indicate adequate standing timber is on-site. A small emplacement excavator (SEE), front-end loader, or JD410 (backhoe/loader) is available and the platoon provides local job security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs a log obstacle tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block or delay the enemy. Obstacles stop or delay an enemies main battle tank (MBT). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant conducts a ground reconnaissance with the squad leaders if possible.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the dispersion areas.</li> <li>b. Identified the routes to and from the site.</li> <li>c. Identified the availability and location of materials.</li> <li>d. Identified the overwatch positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon constructs log hurdles.</li> <li>3. The platoon leader selects a site where log hurdles cannot be readily bypassed. The leader sites the hurdles on the steepest part of a slope and as near to the top as possible.</li> <li>4. The platoon leader selects three 25-centimeter-diameter logs or one 45-centimeter-diameter log for each hurdle. The platoon--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Staked the logs firmly in place across a roadway or on the ground of a bypass route.</li> <li>b. Lashed the log poles to the stakes, placing the stakes no more than 1.5 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Buried the securing stakes a minimum of 60 centimeters in the ground with 60 centimeters remaining above ground.</li> <li>d. Constructed each log hurdle within one squad hour.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader sends the progress completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ) by secure means.</li> <li>6. The platoon leader determines the log crib to construct and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be readily bypassed. The platoon--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the rectangular log crib with a 6-meter front, facing one corner of the triangular log crib towards the enemy.</li> <li>b. Only used the logs that were a minimum of 20 centimeters in diameter.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon leader ensures that all vertical logs are cut approximately 3 meters long and emplaced 1.5 meters below the ground. The platoon--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the vertical logs 1.8 meters apart.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Secured the logs together and filled the center with earth taken from the enemy side of the obstacle. c. Constructed the log crib within eight platoon hours. d. Constructed a log-post obstacle.  8. The platoon leader determines the length and depth of the log post obstacle and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be easily bypassed. The platoon-- a. Constructed the log post obstacle with a minimum of four rows, an irregular spacing of 1 to 2 meters between posts, an irregular height of 75 to 120 centimeters, 1.5 meters underground, and a minimum of 40 centimeters in diameter. b. Attached wire to the posts in an irregular pattern.  9. The platoon leader determines the work rate based on the length of the front, and available personnel and equipment (such as a pile driver, auger, or hand tools).  10. The platoon constructs the log-post obstacle within plus 10 percent of the time calculated in step 9.  11. The platoon leader sends progress completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1940.10-1001 052-195-3066	Direct the Construction of Complex Obstacles DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF NONEXPLOSIVE OBSTACLES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-205-1001 052-218-3002	USE PRECISION MEASURING TOOLS Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003 052-218-3005 052-253-1203	Conduct digital troop leader procedures Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2 Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1235 052-256-3034	CUT TIMBERS WITH A CHAIN SAW ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	O1-1940.00-1001	Supervise Construction of Obstacles

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT PROTECTIVE EARTH WALLS AND BERMS (05-3-0311)  
 (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is directed to construct protective earth walls and berms. A dozer is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs earthen walls and berms providing protection against direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the earth walls and berms are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of the walls and berms.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised the commander on the site selection and the wall or berm to satisfy various weather, topographical, tactical, and other military requirements.</li> <li>b. Increased the berm and wall effectiveness by locating them in adequately defended areas.</li> <li>c. Integrated the walls and berms with other forms of protection such as dispersion, concealment, and adjacent fighting positions.</li> <li>d. Constructed the inside area large enough to allow the unit members to perform operational duties.</li> <li>e. Constructed the wall and berm heights as close to the height of the protected equipment as possible.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon constructs the berms to withstand indirect fire blast and fragmentation from medium artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the berms entirely of compacted earth fill. Ensured that the sides had a 1:1 slope and constant maintenance. Used a waterproof covering or sandbags to stabilize the wall.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the berms with revetments had a 1:1 slope, with the revetment located on the inside of the wall as close as possible to the protected equipment. See FM 5-103 for the details on the revetment construction.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon constructs the walls to withstand indirect fire blast and fragmentation from small artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the free-standing soil-cement wall, with a slope of 1:10, using a mixture of 1-part portland cement (by weight) to 10-parts soil (by weight). Used special equipment to construct the forms and prepared the soil cement mixture (cement mixers, wood tools, and hand tools).</li> <li>b. Ensured that the construction of a soil bin wall was at least 30 centimeters thick and contained side revetments that were made from logs, dimensional timber, plywood, or corrugated metal. See FM 5-103.</li> </ul> <p>4. The platoon constructs a plywood portable wall to withstand mortar shell fragments impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Braced both ends of each 2.8-meter wall section with 10-centimeter guy cables to prevent it from being blown over by the blast wave.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Filled the completed wall with a suitable soil material (sand if possible) and waterproofed the top.  5. The platoon constructs the walls and the berms, in the specified time, sending the status and completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ). The times for the walls that are 1.5 meters (5 feet) high and 3 meters (10 feet) long should be as follows: a. The berms should be 3 man-hours. b. The berms with revetment should be 20 man-hours. c. The soil cement wall should be 25 man-hours. d. The soil bin wall with revetment should be 35 man-hours. e. The plywood portable wall should be 5 man-hours.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-2000	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN FIELD
	052-195-2010	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN URBAN TERRAIN
	052-195-3113	Supervise construction of a checkpoint
	052-195-4009	DETERMINE LOGISTICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR NONEXPLOSIVE ANTIVEHICULAR OBSTACLES
	052-195-4050	PREPARE ENGINEER ESTIMATES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations buildings
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-225-3305	ESTIMATE REQUIREMENTS FOR VEHICLES FIGHTING POSITIONS
	052-227-1005	PERFORM OPERATOR PREVENTIVE-MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1103	OPERATE THE WINCH OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1106	OPERATE A FIXED FIRE EXTINGUISHER ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-227-1110	UNFOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1111	FOLD THE BLADE OF AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1225	DRIVE AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1226	CONSTRUCT VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1233	PERFORM FORDING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1241	HANDLE PALLETIZED CARGO WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1250	CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-253-1047	MIX MATERIAL WITH ROTARY TILLER
	052-253-1203	Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1230	CUT WOOD WITH A CIRCULAR SAW
	052-253-1231	DRILL HOLES WITH A WOOD BORER
	052-253-1232	DRIVE NAILS, SPIKES, OR DRIFT PINS WITH A NAIL DRIVER
	052-253-1235	CUT TIMBERS WITH A CHAIN SAW
	052-254-1037	CONSTRUCT A DITCH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1038	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1039	EXCAVATE A HULL DEFILADE POSITION WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1040	SPREAD A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1041	BACKFILL MATERIAL AROUND A BELOW-GROUND STRUCTURE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1042	LEVEL FILL MATERIAL IN A FILL AREA WITH THE ANGLE BLADE OF THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1057	BACKFILL WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1063	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-2041	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2042	MAKE A SIDEHILL EXCAVATION WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2043	FINISH SIDE SLOPES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2047	CONSTRUCT A BERM WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-256-3033	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF PROTECTIVE EARTH WALLS AND BERMS
	052-256-3041	DIRECT SOILS STABILIZATION OPERATIONS
	052-256-3042	DIRECT DRAINAGE OPERATIONS
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3044	DIRECT MOTORIZED SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3046	DIRECT COMPACTION OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS
STP 5-12B1-SM	551-721-1306	PERFORM OPERATOR/CREW PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS/SERVICES
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	551-721-1306	PERFORM OPERATOR/CREW PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS/SERVICES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.



**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY-AREA ACTIVITIES (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's assembly-area (AA) activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT BUNKERS AND SHELTERS (05-3-0312)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The platoon has organic hand tools, a backhoe, a bulldozer, and a crane. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs bunkers and shelters providing protection from the direct or indirect fire and/or the weather as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of the bunkers and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural shelters such as caves, mines, and tunnels whenever possible.</li> <li>b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors.</li> </ul> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If constructed underground, it provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment.</li> <li>2. If constructed as a cut and cover, it requires partial excavation and backfill.</li> <li>3. If constructed above ground, it can be constructed quickly and requires less labor.</li> <li>4. The above ground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or the water table is excessively high.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible.</li> <li>d. Prepared construction-time estimates using the man-hours found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>f. Constructed the shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon constructs the bunkers and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter.</li> <li>b. Sloped the floor a minimum of 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance.</li> <li>c. If lights were used inside, hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside.</li> <li>d. Checked the cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.</li> <li>e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1cubic foot per minute in the bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. This condition was met when light drapes covering the vents were moved by incoming air. Used the stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through.</p> <p>g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection.</p> <p>(1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the above-ground cavity-wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(3) The steel-framed/fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(4) The hardened frame/fabric shelters, concrete arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover.</p> <p>h. Camouflaged and concealed all of the shelters.</p> <p>3. The platoon improves the bunkers or shelters as time permits, by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage.</p> <p>4. The platoon leader reports the construction status mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1362	CAMOUFLAGE EQUIPMENT
	052-195-3113	Supervise construction of a checkpoint
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL
		PLANNING
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations
	052-218-3002	buildings
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using
	052-218-3003	FBCB2
	052-218-4013	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using
	052-236-1203	ABCS
	052-253-1202	CONSTRUCT A WALL SYSTEM
	052-253-1202	DRIVE A SMALL EMPLACEMENT
	052-253-1203	EXCAVATOR CROSS-COUNTRY
	052-253-1203	Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement
	052-253-1206	Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement
	052-253-1212	Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1212	OPERATE AN AIR COMPRESSOR
	052-253-1230	CUT WOOD WITH A CIRCULAR SAW
	052-253-1231	DRILL HOLES WITH A WOOD BORER

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-253-1232	DRIVE NAILS, SPIKES, OR DRIFT PINS WITH A NAIL DRIVER
	052-253-1235	CUT TIMBERS WITH A CHAIN SAW
	052-256-3042	DIRECT DRAINAGE OPERATIONS
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3046	DIRECT COMPACTION OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY-AREA ACTIVITIES (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's assembly-area (AA) activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PLAN/CONSTRUCT STRONGPOINTS (05-3-0314)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-102)  
 (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer platoon is in support of a maneuver force ordered to establish a strongpoint in a given location during day or night, in varying weather conditions, and in open or restricted terrain. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A strongpoint is developed to support the maneuver-force scheme of maneuver, impede the enemy's ability to easily bypass the strongpointed area, prevent enemy penetration, withstand enemy medium artillery, and withstand close air support. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader issues a warning order to his subordinate leaders.</li> <li>2. The platoon leader conducts a map reconnaissance of the area to be strongpointed.</li> <li>3. The platoon leader conducts an on-the-ground reconnaissance of the area to be strongpointed.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the maneuver-force commander to pinpoint the location of the weapon systems.</li> <li>b. Coordinated individual positions and command and control (C2) of the positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The platoon leader identifies and prioritizes the tasks to be accomplished.</li> <li>5. The platoon leader identifies the equipment and materials required to support the engineer effort, requests class IV and class V, and submits the request to higher headquarters (HQ).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the mines and the obstacles materials.</li> <li>b. Identified the engineer equipment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The platoon leader issues an operation order (OPORD) to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>7. The platoon (supplemented with maneuver-force personnel when available) constructs the primary and alternate individual positions, the crew-served weapon positions, and the C2 positions as well as the communications trenches and the bunker positions (medical, supply).</li> <li>8. The platoon reinforces the existing structures and natural obstacles within the strongpoint where appropriate.</li> <li>9. The platoon provides countermobility support to enhance the effectiveness of the strongpoint.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used of scatterable minefields.</li> <li>b. Placed obstacles.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. The platoon leader provides recommendations to the maneuver force on the effective use of camouflage and deception to enhance the effectiveness of the strongpoint.  11. The platoon recommends, plans, and develops the access or egress routes for the strongpoint. a. Detected and neutralized the minefields. b. Constructed and maintained the combat roads and the trails. c. Reduced obstacles as needed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-3113	Supervise construction of a checkpoint
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations buildings
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** DISRUPT CONSTRUCTION OF VEHICLE FIGHTING POSITIONS (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS (05-3-0603)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps less than or equal to 50 meters are prepared in 1 hour. Gaps more than 50 meters are prepared in 2 hours. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon constructs the approaches to the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the slope approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</li> <li>b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side and not in the stream.</li> </ul> 2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Filled the short-deep gaps with rock or gravel.</li> <li>b. Prepared the soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</li> </ul> 3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that poles were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford and at least 1.5 meters above the water level.</li> </ul> 4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1980.10-1002 052-195-4065	Direct the Construction of Fords CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**ELEMENTS:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING (05-3-0606)  
(FM 90-13) (FM 3-34.2) (TC 5-210)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been directed to support a maneuver element during the assault phase of a hasty or a deliberate river-crossing operation. A river-crossing site reconnaissance has been completed and the crossing sites have been selected by higher headquarters (HQ). The platoon has been augmented by additional elements for security. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The maneuver element is briefed and then safely transported across a water obstacle, in the sequence and the time outlined in the operation order (OPORD), to the predesignated sites on the far shore. Strict noise discipline is adhered to at all times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader, assisted by the platoon sergeant, plans for the crossing.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Extracted information from the OPORD and determined the--                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Crossing time.</li> <li>(2) Crossing sites.</li> <li>(3) Crossing-force composition.</li> <li>(4) Assembly or holding areas.</li> <li>(5) Routes to be traveled</li> <li>(6) Communication requirements.</li> <li>(7) Platoon's follow-on mission, such as preparation of the far shore for amphibious vehicle crossing, if any.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Identified the entry and exit points through a map or ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the exit points were far enough downstream to allow for the drift of the boats using the following formula:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Downstream drift (in feet) = current feet per second (FPS) x river width (in feet).</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Determined the amount of required engineer equipment to include--                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assault boats, reconnaissance boats, and safety boats.</li> <li>(2) Outboard motors for powered crossing.</li> <li>(3) Engineer boat operators or the boat crews.</li> <li>(4) Night-vision devices, such as the starlight scopes, the miniscopes, and minimetasopes.</li> <li>(5) Personal-flotation devices.</li> </ol> </li> <li>e. Ensured that all the required equipment was available prior to the departure from the engineer-equipment park (EEP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon leader issues the OPORD.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned the sections or squads to specific crossing sites by using three engineers per site.</li> <li>b. Briefed the platoon on the crossing unit's identification, the expected strength, and the time of crossing.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Briefed the platoon on any preplanned signals, such as the use of colored smoke, flares, and audible warnings as outlined in the signal operation instructions (SOI) extract and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>d. Outlined what to do in the event of an enemy attack.</p> <p>e. The platoon leader gave a water-safety briefing to all personnel stressing the following points:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) All personnel should have their trousers unbloused.</li> <li>(2) All personnel should wear their approved personal-flotation devices throughout the operation.</li> <li>(3) Soldiers should have their load-bearing equipment (LBE), their ruck sacks should be worn unbuckled at the waist; and their rifles should be slung outside of the life preserver and opposite the outboard side with the muzzle down.</li> <li>(4) Crew-served weapons, radios, ammunition and any other bulk equipment should be lashed securely to the boat to prevent loss if the boat should overturn.</li> <li>(5) Radios, batteries, and ammunition should be waterproofed using available material such as ponchos or waterproof bags.</li> <li>(6) Pointed objects should be padded to prevent puncture of the boat.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Hot weapons are cooled prior to being placed in the boat to prevent damage to the boat and any injury to the personnel.</p> <p>3. The platoon sergeant organizes the platoon for the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the specific section or squad duties. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Loaded and transported assault boats to the crossing site.</li> <li>(2) Marked the entry and exit points.</li> <li>(3) Inflated the boats.</li> <li>(4) Operated the boats during the crossing.</li> <li>(5) Operated the safety boats.</li> <li>(6) Marked the lanes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Briefed the crews on their duties and on any special instructions.</li> </ol> <p>4. The boat crews prepare the assault boats.</p> <p>5. The platoon prepares the crossing site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inflated the boats within five-to-ten minutes using the pumps provided.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all the required equipment was available. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included 11 paddles per boat for a silent crossing.</li> <li>(2) Included outboard motors and fuel for a powered crossing.</li> <li>(3) Included 15 personal-flotation devices per boat.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>6. The platoon briefs the assaulting force and conducts a rehearsal in both daylight and blackout conditions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the entry and exit points, as outlined in the OPORD, ensuring that each boat had a specific point to land which was visible during the daylight and under the conditions of reduced visibility.</li> <li>b. Marked the lanes to entry points by the method outlined in the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Established the dismounted rally points (RPs), manned by engineers, to link the assaulting forces with the boats.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Each assaulting wave could use the same RP as the previous wave.</p> <p>7. The boat crews operate and control the assault boats.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a rehearsal for both the daylight and blackout conditions if the supported unit was not familiar with the assault-boat operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Demonstrated the carrying techniques by using high carry for long distances and low carry for short distances.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Demonstrated the loading and unloading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a) The crew members stayed as low as possible when entering and leaving the boat to prevent capsizing it.</li> <li>( b) The crew members individually loaded and unloaded a boat at steep river banks and along the shoreline where the water was deep near the shore. They also individually loaded or unloaded from or into a larger vessel such as a landing craft, mechanized (LCM).</li> <li>( c) The crew members, in pairs, loaded and unloaded a boat when they were at the shallow water riverbanks.</li> </ul> <p>(3) Explained the methods or commands to be used in establishing the cadence.</p> <p>(4) Demonstrated and practiced the paddling techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Briefed the assaulting force on the water-safety procedures outlined in subtask 2e.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each boat had three engineers for a silent crossing. The boat could carry 12 additional infantrymen.</li> <li>d. Ensured that each boat had two engineers for a powered crossing. The boat could carry 12 additional infantrymen.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The boats should carry squad-sized elements, if the tactical situation permits, to maintain the squad's integrity on the far shore.</p> <p>8. The boat crews deflate and repack the boats on the far shore or return to the previous location on the near shore for another wave of assault troops.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the cadence keeping the boats on line and in the order specified by the crossing plan.</li> <li>b. Ensured that water-safety procedures were adhered to at all times.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the noise and light discipline was adhered to at all times.</li> <li>d. Landed the boats at the designated points on the far shore.</li> <li>e. Retrieved the personal-flotation devices from the assaulting force.</li> <li>f. Deflated and repacked the boats on the far shore or returned to the previous location on the near shore for another wave of assault troops.</li> </ul> <p>9. The platoon leader submits reports to higher headquarters as required by the OPOD and unit SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1980.10-1001	Conduct Engineer Support for River-Crossing Operations
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-198-1180	PMCS assault boats
	052-198-2050	Load assault boats

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4005	PLAN RIVER CROSSING OPERATIONS DIGITALLY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** OPERATE RIVER-CROSSING SITES (05-3-0609)  
(FM 90-13) (FM 3-34.2) (TC 5-210)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in support of a maneuver force during all phases of a deliberate river-crossing operation. As part of the operation order (OPORD), the platoon has the task of operating various sites in order to cross the elements of the maneuver force. The crossing sites will be operated by the platoon. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crossing sites are operated by the platoon to cross all of the elements of the maneuver force by the time specified in the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant reviews the mission.</li> <li>2. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant coordinates with other elements to ensure that the traffic flow is according to the prearranged sequence and schedule.</li> <li>3. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant plans the operation of the sites.</li> <li>4. The platoon leader issues the order.</li> <li>5. The platoon sergeant organizes the platoon for the mission.</li> <li>6. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant designates the sites to be operated as outlined in the OPORD.</li> <li>7. The platoon operates the assault boat crossing sites when ordered.</li> <li>8. The platoon and support personnel operate the crossing sites for amphibious vehicles when ordered.</li> <li>9. The platoon and support personnel operate the sites for M4T6/class 60 bridge or raft construction when ordered.</li> <li>10. The platoon and support personnel operate the launch and retrieval sites for the ribbon bridge or raft construction when ordered.</li> <li>11. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant ensures that the designated security team provides continuous security.</li> <li>12. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant submits reports to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1980.10-1001	Conduct Engineer Support for River-Crossing Operations

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

##### TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

##### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

##### TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

##### TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT AN EXPEDIENT LANDING ZONE FOR HELICOPTERS (05-3-0701)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-34.230) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient landing zone for the helicopters and to give the general location of the site. The landing zone will be used by single UH-60 helicopters for approximately 3 days. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs an expedient landing zone capable of supporting UH-60/UH-1B helicopter operations within 3 hours. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader coordinates with the company for additional tools and supplies.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant selects the site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance identifying the possible sites.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The sites met the tactical requirements.</li> <li>(2) The sites had slopes of less than 3 percent.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance of possible sites.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected a site having a minimum number of trees. The UH-60 or the UH-1B required a 30.5 meters by 30.5 meters clear area. See FMs 5-430-00-1 and 5-430-00-2</li> <li>(2) Selected a site with no approach or departure obstructions. The approach or departure zone required a surface ratio of 10:1.</li> <li>(3) Selected a site with ground access.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant directs the site layout.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Defined the boundaries of the landing zone.</li> <li>b. Designated the approach or the departure zone.</li> <li>c. Set up the material storage areas containing the vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The platoon clears the landing zone and the glide path.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared obstructions from the glide path.</li> <li>b. Removed trees using pioneer tools or demolitions.</li> <li>c. Cleared brush from the landing zone.</li> <li>d. Marked the landing zone.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Marked the four corners with regulation panels that were 50 centimeters by 65 centimeters.</li> <li>(2) Marked obstructions; for example, wires and tree stumps nearest the landing zone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant reports the mission progress/completion to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-1310	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION FIRING SYSTEMS
	052-193-1311	PRIME MILITARY EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-1312	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION INITIATING SETS
	052-193-2015	PLACE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-3022	CALCULATE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-4040	SUPERVISE ENGINEER DEMOLITION MISSIONS
	052-194-4013	Plan engineer suport to security actions stability operations(SASO)
	052-195-3112	Supervise hasty airfield repair
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4080	Plan mobility operations (helicopter landing zones, airstrips)
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS	
052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.



**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONSTRUCT COMBAT ROADS/TRAILS (05-3-0705)  
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives a operation order (OPORD) to construct a combat trail or road. The order specifies the start and finish points, the general route location, lane requirements, the traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and the completion time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs the combat road/trail, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed, no later than the time prescribed in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the company for a trafficability test set.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon leader/platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security.</p> <p>3. The platoon constructs a combat trail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the start and finish points as specified in the order. Followed the general route.</li> <li>b. Cleared and grubbed the route as required. Removed trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and topsoil impeding smooth vehicle movement to the depth of the topsoil.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the trail was one lane wide, 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet plus or minus 3 feet).</li> <li>d. Ensured that no route grade exceeded the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades.</li> <li>e. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. The expedient surface depended on the available materials.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Refer to Field Manual (FM 5-34) for surface installation techniques.</p> <p>4. The platoon constructs a combat road.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established start and finish points as specified in the OPORD. Followed the general route.</li> <li>b. Cleared and grubbed the route. Removed trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and topsoil to the depth of the topsoil.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the road's width was according to the mission directive. A one-lane road was 6 meters plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet plus or minus 3 feet); a two-lane road was 12 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (40 feet plus or minus 3 feet).</li> <li>d. Ensured that no route grade exceeded the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Used the trafficability test set and ensured the trafficability rating cone index met or exceeded the vehicle cone index according to FM 5-430-00-1.</p> <p>f. Ensured that flowing water did not interfere with the traffic flow. Ensured that expedient fords or culverts carried water across/under the road. The platoon--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Constructed an expedient ford.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that slopes for approaches were no greater than 1:3 for wheeled and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Removed material from the banks to the side of the approach and ensured that it was not deposited in the stream.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Prepared the bottom of the ford.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Filled short, deep gaps with rock or gravel.</li> <li>(b) Prepared soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel.</li> <li>(c) Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet, plus or minus 3 feet).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Marked the edges of the ford. Ensured that the poles extended at least 1.5 meters above the water level and were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford.</li> <li>(4) Assembled/installed culverts.</li> <li>(5) Constructed roadside ditches as required.</li> </ul> <p>g. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. The expedient surface depends on the available materials.</p> <p>NOTE: Refer to FM 5-34 for details of surface installation techniques.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-1310	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION FIRING SYSTEMS
	052-193-1311	PRIME MILITARY EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-1312	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION INITIATING SETS
	052-193-2015	PLACE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-3022	CALCULATE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-4040	SUPERVISE ENGINEER DEMOLITION MISSIONS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-227-1005	PERFORM OPERATOR PREVENTIVE-MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-243-1251	DETERMINE THE PLASTICITY INDEX OF A SOIL
	052-243-1253	DETERMINE THE IN-PLACE SOIL DENSITY BY SAND-CONE METHOD
	052-243-1254	DETERMINE THE IN-PLACE SOIL DENSITY AND THE MOISTURE CONTENT BY NUCLEAR METHOD
	052-243-1425	DETERMINE THE SOIL DENSITY BY USING THE SAND-CONE METHOD
	052-243-1426	DETERMINE THE SOIL DENSITY AND THE MOISTURE CONTENT WITH A NUCLEAR MOISTURE-AND-DENSITY TESTER
	052-243-1500	DETERMINE THE MOISTURE CONTENT OF A SOIL
	052-243-1502	OBTAIN A REPRESENTATIVE SOIL SAMPLE
	052-243-1503	DETERMINE THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF A SOIL
	052-243-1506	CLASSIFY A SOIL USING THE UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM
	052-243-2001	DEVELOP A SOIL PROFILE
	052-243-2175	CONDUCT A SOILS EXPLORATION
	052-243-3200	DEVELOP A SOIL PROFILE
	052-253-1049	ROLL MATERIAL WITH 9-WHEEL SELF-PROPELLED ROLLER
	052-253-1051	COMPACT LOOSE MATERIAL WITH HIGH SPEED TAMPING FOOT COMPACTOR
	052-253-1053	ROLL MATERIAL WITH SELF-PROPELLED VIBRATORY ROLLER
	052-253-1055	ROLL MATERIAL WITH STEEL WHEEL ROLLER
	052-253-1059	PRESSURE FILL WATER DISTRIBUTOR
	052-253-1060	SPRAY AN AREA WITH WATER DISTRIBUTOR
	052-253-1202	DRIVE A SMALL EMPLACEMENT EXCAVATOR CROSS-COUNTRY
	052-253-1203	Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-253-1205	Load Haul Unit(s) with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1212	OPERATE AN AIR COMPRESSOR
	052-253-1235	CUT TIMBERS WITH A CHAIN SAW
	052-254-1038	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1040	SPREAD A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1050	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1052	CONSTRUCT A V DITCH WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1053	LEVEL A ROAD WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1054	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1055	SPREAD PILES OF LOOSE MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1057	BACKFILL WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1058	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1060	LOAD A HAUL UNIT WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1061	MOVE A LOAD WITH THE SCOOP LOADER CLAMSHELL
	052-254-1063	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1064	SPREAD FILL MATERIAL WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1070	Spread Fill Material with a Motorized Scraper
	052-254-2043	FINISH SIDE SLOPES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2044	FINAL GRADE AN AREA WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-2045	FINISH SLOPES WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-196-2002	DETERMINE RADIUS OF CURVES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** ASSEMBLE AND INSTALL CULVERTS (05-3-0710)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives a mission to install a culvert across a road. The mission statement specifies the general location, the availability of corrugated metal pipe (CMP), and the completion time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon designs and installs the culvert to provide drainage for area runoff and to support the military load classification (MLC) traffic for the road, no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the platoon leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials.</p> <p>* 2. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader sizes the culvert.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Determined the runoff using the field expedient <math>Q = 2ARC</math> method, where: (01-1990.00-0055) Q = Total runoff in cubic feet per second (CFS) A = Drainage area in acres R = Rainfall intensity. C = Coefficient factor</p> <p>NOTE: This method is applicable only to drainage areas of 100 acres or less.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Determined the culvert size and number of pipes. Used only available culvert sizes in the calculation.</p> <p>4. The platoon prepares the culvert site.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Selected the specific culvert location. The culvert followed an established drainage channel if one existed. Placed the culvert perpendicular to the road centerline where no channel existed. For a ditch-relief culvert, placed the culvert at a 60-degree angle to the roadside ditch.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Ensured that the culvert invert elevation was at or below the bottom of the existing natural drainage channel or ditch.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Ensured that the culvert slope was between 0.5 percent and 2.0 percent.</p> <p>NOTE: A slope less than 0.5 percent is unacceptable. Slopes greater than 2.0 percent require erosion control at the culvert outlet, such as riprap.</p> <p>5. The platoon prepares the culvert trench.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Ensured that the trench for the culvert bed had the proper slope and adequate depth for the bed, culvert, and cover. The depth of the culvert bed was at least one-tenth of the culvert diameter. Cover was equal to the greater of one half of the culvert diameter or 30 centimeters .</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that the trench width provided for the culvert diameter, side spacing and, if multiple pipes are installed, interculvert spacing. The side and interculvert spacing was one-half of the culvert diameter.</p> <p>c. Installed shoring before emplacing the culvert if the trench was deeper than shoulder height of the soldiers in it and the sides were not cut back to their natural angle of repose.</p> <p>6. The platoon installs the culvert.</p> <p>NOTE: The ditch has no standing or running water in it when installation begins. The culvert bed, made of granular fill, is placed and compacted in 15-centimeter lifts. The minimum depth of the bed is one-tenth of the culvert diameter.</p> <p>a. Assembled the CMP culvert.</p> <p>(1) Constructed the CMP bottom section downstream to upstream.</p> <p>(2) Lapped the upstream CMP section from upstream to downstream.</p> <p>(3) Centered the top sections over the bottom section joints.</p> <p>(4) Offset the first top section in the downstream direction about one-half section.</p> <p>(5) Bolted all joints where three sections of pipe overlapped.</p> <p>b. Placed and compacted the backfill in 15-centimeter lifts.</p> <p>c. Constructed the upstream headwall using sandbags, timber, or rock.</p> <p>d. Constructed the downstream headwall if time permitted. If no downstream headwall was constructed, the CMP extended a minimum of 61 centimeters beyond the toe of the slope.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1990.10-1003	Direct Earthmoving Operations
	01-1990.10-1004	Supervise Site Selection and Layout
	01-1990.20-1001	Direct Horizontal Construction
	01-1990.20-1002	Direct Construction Site Drainage
	01-2000.10-1001	Interpret Plans and Specifications
	01-2000.20-1001	Direct Vertical Construction
	01-2050.10-1001	Reconcile Project Work Progress With the Construction Plans, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1002	Prepare a Construction Plan, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1003	Use Construction Management Techniques
	01-2050.20-1001	Direct a Construction Project
	01-2240.20-1001	Coordinate Engineer-Unique Support Logistic Requirements
	01-2250.20-1001	Prepare Engineer Estimates

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-194-4013	Plan engineer support to security actions stability operations(SASO)
	052-195-3111	Supervise the installation of culverts
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-253-1202	DRIVE A SMALL EMPLACEMENT EXCAVATOR CROSS-COUNTRY
	052-253-1203	Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1212	OPERATE AN AIR COMPRESSOR
	052-254-1052	CONSTRUCT A V DITCH WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1053	LEVEL A ROAD WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1055	SPREAD PILES OF LOOSE MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-255-1038	INSTALL HOOKBLOCK
	052-256-3020	INTERPRET A CONSTRUCTION PRINT
	052-256-3021	INTERPRET CONSTRUCTION GRADE STAKES
	052-256-3042	DIRECT DRAINAGE OPERATIONS
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3044	DIRECT MOTORIZED SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3046	DIRECT COMPACTION OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3049	DIRECT CRANE OPERATIONS
	052-256-4140	PREPARE A BILL OF MATERIALS
	052-256-4141	DETERMINE EVENTS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4142	ESTIMATE EVENT DURATIONS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4143	SCHEDULE WORK IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4144	EXECUTE A QUALITY CONTROL PLAN

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CLEAR/REPAIR EXISTING AIRFIELDS (05-3-0711)  
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting continuous tactical operations on an airhead during darkness and daylight under all weather conditions. The platoon has received a tactical mission to clear an existing runway and make expedient repairs as required (assault airfield). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon, utilizing available equipment, clears the runway of obstacles and makes all necessary repairs, making the runway capable of accommodating fixed-wing aircraft. The time required to perform this task is increased when it is conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a job priority.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Cleared/repared the minimum operating space (MOS).</li> <li>(2) Cleared/repared the access route (to allow access to the shelter and the base facilities) at least 25 feet wide.</li> <li>(3) Cleared/repared a second MOS.</li> <li>(4) Cleared/repared additional access routes.</li> <li>(5) Lengthened the first MOS to at least 7,000 feet.</li> <li>(6) Lengthened the second MOS.</li> <li>(7) Widened the first MOS to at least 90 feet.</li> <li>(8) Widened the second MOS.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determined the availability of natural and construction materials for airfield repair, host-nation/local equipment, and other recourses/resources, based on intelligence information.</li> <li>c. Determined equipment assets necessary to clear and repair the runway surface, based on existing conditions, and recommends deployment of the required equipment to the task-force commander.</li> <li>d. Determined the material to be used for repairs based on the existing conditions (natural material, sand grids, quick-setting cement, or airfield matting).</li> <li>e. Planned for the deployment of engineer equipment and materials.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon deploys equipment and material.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Deployed by air.</li> <li>b. Deployed by land and arrived no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon leader conducts an on-site survey to determine the exact extent of the damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected for damage and marked craters and spalls to be filled.</li> <li>b. Reported to higher headquarters and requested additional support as necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The platoon locates locally available equipment/material that can be used to clear/repair the runway and moves it to the airfield.</p> <p>5. The platoon clears the runway of all unexploded ordnance (UXO).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) support if available.</li> <li>b. Cleared, manually, the runway of small UXOs from the MOS.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used grapnel hooks, wire, or rope.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Used for remotely-delivered mines.</li> <li>(b) Ensured that all personnel took cover or layed in a prone position at least 50 meters from the mine.</li> <li>(c) Threw the grapnel or, if removing a mine, attached a rope, wire, or grapnel to the mine.</li> <li>(d) Pulled the rope or wire from the covered position.</li> <li>(e) Waited at least 30 seconds before leaving cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Used hardened engineer equipment (bulldozers, bucket loaders, graders, and backhoes).                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Protected the operator by placing bullet-proof material around the cab.</li> <li>(b) Shielded all rubber and light metal lines with strong plastic (kevlar), sandbags, or other protective materials.</li> <li>(c) Covered any other vulnerable portion of the equipment with any means available.</li> <li>(d) Lifted or pushed the UXOs from the airfield, ensuring that personnel were protected from explosions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon performs repair procedures which are standard for all Army crater repair methods.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used pneumatic pumps, empty number 10 cans, or buckets to remove all standing water from the crater's bottom.</li> <li>b. Pushed debris and small, heaved material (no dimension greater than 12 inches) back into the crater.</li> <li>c. Compacted the material to at least 85 percent compactive effort (CE) 55 and California bearing ratio (CBR) of 4.</li> <li>d. Pushed all oversized, large debris away from the crater and removed it from the site.</li> <li>e. Cleared all foreign objects and debris which might interfere with the resumption of emergency aircraft operations from the runaway throughout the repair operation.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon performs general crater repair using the sand-grid method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Backfilled the crater with compacted debris no higher than 16 inches below the existing pavement.</li> <li>b. Placed an impervious membrane on top of the debris.</li> <li>c. Placed one layer of sand grid on top of the debris.</li> <li>d. Used pickets or placed sandbags on the corners and sides to prevent the accordion-like sand grid from retracting to its original form.</li> <li>e. Filled in the sand grid from the near end to the far end.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Personnel using hand shovels should ensure that each grid is completely filled with sand.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Placed a second layer of sand grid on top of the first layer. Offset the second layer so that the edges of both layers of the sand grid did not line up directly.</li> <li>g. Filled the second sand grid using the same procedure as for the first layer.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Made at least two coverages with a vibratory roller (one coverage means sufficient passes over the crater to traffic every point on the crater surface once).</p> <p>i. Filled in any low spots by hand.</p> <p>j. Bolted a fiber-reinforced plastic (FRP) mat every three meters on top of the repair to prevent foreign-object damage (FOD).</p> <p>k. Met deflection criteria for sand-grid repair and completed the repair within three hours.</p> <p>8. The platoon performs general crater repair using alternate methods.</p> <p>a. Used the concrete-cap repair method if materials and time were available.</p> <p>b. Used the stone and grout cap repair method if materials and time were available.</p> <p>9. The platoon performs spall-repair operations.</p> <p>NOTE: When using polymer concrete for repairs, personnel should roll down their sleeves and wear chemical-resistant gloves and safety goggles. If the liquid component splashes onto the skin, wash it off immediately with water. Do not swallow the liquid component or breathe in the vapors over an extended period. Since the fumes are hazardous over extended periods, personnel placing polymer resin concrete may need to don the protective mask, if exposure to the fumes will be extensive. Keep sparks and flames away from the highly-flammable liquid component.</p> <p>a. Placed no impervious membranes in the spall since the damage did not penetrate the pavement.</p> <p>b. Ensured that sufficient amounts of the material were available to fill the entire spall.</p> <p>c. Removed loose debris and unsound pavement from the spall hole.</p> <p>d. Formed 1-inch deep holes (if the hole was smooth, irregularly shaped, and wet) in the sides to reduce the likelihood of the repair popping out of the hole under aircraft loading.</p> <p>e. Tried to remove free water if the hole was wet, and if possible, dried the hole with heat or compressed air.</p> <p>f. Mixed materials.</p> <p>g. Filled in spall using a concrete, stone, and grout mixture or polymer concrete, following the same procedures as outlined for crater repair.</p> <p>h. Met spall repair specification and completed the repairs within 4 hours.</p> <p>10. The platoon sweeps around the crater and continues sweeping.</p> <p>11. The platoon leader reports to higher headquarters upon completion.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	01-1990.10-1002	Direct the Construction of Combat Roads and Trails
	01-1990.10-1003	Direct Earthmoving Operations
	01-1990.10-1004	Supervise Site Selection and Layout
	01-1990.20-1001	Direct Horizontal Construction
	01-1990.20-1002	Direct Construction Site Drainage
	01-2000.10-1001	Interpret Plans and Specifications
	01-2050.10-1001	Reconcile Project Work Progress With the Construction Plans, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1002	Prepare a Construction Plan, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1003	Use Construction Management Techniques
	01-2050.20-1001	Direct a Construction Project
	01-2260.20-1001	Direct Engineer Actions in Support of Nation Assistance Projects
	052-194-4013	Plan engineer support to security actions stability operations(SASO)
	052-195-3112	Supervise hasty airfield repair
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4080	Plan mobility operations (helicopter landing zones, airstrips)
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations buildings
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-243-1251	DETERMINE THE PLASTICITY INDEX OF A SOIL
	052-243-1253	DETERMINE THE IN-PLACE SOIL DENSITY BY SAND-CONE METHOD
	052-243-1254	DETERMINE THE IN-PLACE SOIL DENSITY AND THE MOISTURE CONTENT BY NUCLEAR METHOD
	052-243-1425	DETERMINE THE SOIL DENSITY BY USING THE SAND-CONE METHOD
	052-243-1426	DETERMINE THE SOIL DENSITY AND THE MOISTURE CONTENT WITH A NUCLEAR MOISTURE-AND-DENSITY TESTER
	052-243-1500	DETERMINE THE MOISTURE CONTENT OF A SOIL
	052-243-1502	OBTAIN A REPRESENTATIVE SOIL SAMPLE
	052-243-1503	DETERMINE THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF A SOIL
	052-243-1506	CLASSIFY A SOIL USING THE UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM
	052-243-2001	DEVELOP A SOIL PROFILE
	052-243-2175	CONDUCT A SOILS EXPLORATION
	052-243-3200	DEVELOP A SOIL PROFILE
	052-252-1036	PRODUCE CONCRETE WITH THE CONCRETE MOBILE MIXER (MODEL M919)
	052-252-1037	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-252-1038	SPRAY BITUMINOUS MATERIALS USING THE BITUMINOUS DISTRIBUTOR
	052-252-1039	PERFORM HAND SPRAYING OPERATIONS
	052-252-1040	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-1041	PERFORM HAND SPRAYING OPERATIONS WITH
	052-252-1042	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-1043	SPREAD AGGREGATE TO SPECIFICATIONS WITH AGGREGATE SPREADER
	052-252-1044	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-1045	SET UP THE HOT OIL HEATER
	052-252-1046	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-1047	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-1048	PERFORM MAINTENANCE ON A BITUMINOUS WEARING SURFACE
	052-252-2001	SET UP THE ASPHALT MELTER
	052-252-2002	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-2003	PRODUCE BITUMINOUS MIX USING A
	052-252-2004	PERFORM DEDRUMMING OPERATIONS
	052-252-2005	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE
	052-252-2006	LAY DOWN HOT MIXED ASPHALT WITH THE BITUMINOUS PAVER
	052-252-2007	PERFORM OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON A
	052-252-2008	PRODUCE HOT MIX ASPHALT USING A 100- TO 150-TONS PER HOUR (TPH) ASPHALT PLANT
	052-252-3055	DIRECT EMPLOYMENT OF A CONCRETE MOBILE MIXER (MODEL M919)
	052-252-3057	SUPERVISE OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS
	052-252-3058	DIRECT THE APPLICATION OF BITUMINOUS MATERIAL LAYDOWN
	052-252-3059	DIRECT THE MANUFACTURE OF ASPHALT CUTBACK
	052-252-3060	DIRECT THE ERECTION OF THE
	052-252-3061	DIRECT ASPHALT PLANT OPERATIONS
	052-252-3062	SUPERVISE OPERATOR'S PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS
	052-253-1049	ROLL MATERIAL WITH 9-WHEEL SELF-PROPELLED ROLLER
	052-253-1051	COMPACT LOOSE MATERIAL WITH HIGH SPEED TAMPING FOOT COMPACTOR
	052-253-1053	ROLL MATERIAL WITH SELF-PROPELLED VIBRATORY ROLLER
	052-253-1055	ROLL MATERIAL WITH STEEL WHEEL ROLLER
	052-253-1059	PRESSURE FILL WATER DISTRIBUTOR
	052-253-1060	SPRAY AN AREA WITH WATER DISTRIBUTOR

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-253-1203	Excavate an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1206	Backfill an Area with a Small Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
	052-253-1212	OPERATE AN AIR COMPRESSOR
	052-254-1037	CONSTRUCT A DITCH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1038	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1040	SPREAD A STOCKPILE WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1042	LEVEL FILL MATERIAL IN A FILL AREA WITH THE ANGLE BLADE OF THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1043	PUSH LOAD THE SCRAPER WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1044	RECOVER EQUIPMENT WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR WINCH
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1049	RIP MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1050	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1052	CONSTRUCT A V DITCH WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1053	LEVEL A ROAD WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1054	SCARIFY MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1055	SPREAD PILES OF LOOSE MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-1057	BACKFILL WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1058	CONSTRUCT A STOCKPILE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1060	LOAD A HAUL UNIT WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1061	MOVE A LOAD WITH THE SCOOP LOADER CLAMSHELL
	052-254-1063	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1064	SPREAD FILL MATERIAL WITH THE WHEELED-TRACTOR SCRAPER/MOTORIZED SCRAPER

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-254-1069	EXCAVATE MATERIAL FROM AN AREA WITH THE MOTORIZED SCRAPER
	052-254-1070	Spread Fill Material with a Motorized Scraper
	052-254-2042	MAKE A SIDEHILL EXCAVATION WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2043	FINISH SIDE SLOPES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-2044	FINAL GRADE AN AREA WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-254-2045	FINISH SLOPES WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
	052-256-3020	INTERPRET A CONSTRUCTION PRINT
	052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY
	052-256-3042	DIRECT DRAINAGE OPERATIONS
	052-256-3043	DIRECT CRAWLER TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3046	DIRECT COMPACTION OPERATIONS
	052-256-3047	DIRECT SCOOP LOADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3048	DIRECT UTILITY TRACTOR OPERATIONS
	052-256-4140	PREPARE A BILL OF MATERIALS
	052-256-4141	DETERMINE EVENTS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4142	ESTIMATE EVENT DURATIONS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4143	SCHEDULE WORK IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CLEAR OBSTACLES WITH ENGINEER EQUIPMENT (05-3-0767)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The maneuver force encounters a series of obstacles and conducts an in-stride breach to pass the attacking forces. The engineer platoon is directed to clear the obstacles. The platoon has its organic assets and enough attached equipment to accomplish the task. The area is secure but enemy contact with squad-size elements or smaller is possible. Security is provided by the maneuver task force. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Using organic or attached engineer equipment, the platoon removes designated obstacles as specified in the order. Obstacles must be cleared of booby traps before the removal operation begins. The platoon accomplishes the mission by the time specified in the order without causing damage or injury to equipment or personnel. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacle from information provided by the maneuver force and/or obstacle reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the type of obstacle (log, wire, nuclear weapons effect, antiairborne, water or breach, rubble, snow or ice, ditches, or craters).</li> <li>b. Determined the obstacle location and dimensions (as a minimum, the depth and frontage).</li> <li>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, time permitting, of the obstacle and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force does not provide sufficient details.</li> </ul> 2. The platoon clears the lane or obstacle of all mines and booby traps (as required).                     3. The platoon fills the antitank ditch and road craters with organic equipment (armored combat earthmovers [ACE], small emplacement excavators [SEE], bulldozers, scooploaders, and backhoes). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Started blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline by means of small cuts.</li> <li>b. Cut and filled until the vehicle could cross to the far bank.</li> <li>c. Ensured that once the depression was filled the vehicle crossed to the far bank, then cut down the berm with the blade until the incline was traversable by the maneuver unit.</li> <li>d. Compacted the roadway to allow passage of task-force vehicles.</li> </ul> 4. The platoon clears log obstacles with organic equipment to demolish and push aside log obstacles to allow free passage of wheeled vehicles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed dug-in logs.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Pushed against the posts to break them off.</li> <li>(2) Pushed against a post while raising the blade to lift the post out of the ground.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Breached an abatis.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Used explosives to remove some of the tree trunks. If branches permitted, drove over the top of the abatis.</p> <p>(2) Cleared a path on one side by pushing over the tree stumps (if the abatis was too high or wheeled vehicles were to follow).</p> <p>c. Utilized SEEs and chainsaws, when required, to assist in the destruction of log and timber obstacles.</p> <p>d. Used explosives to demolish the obstacle; used an ACE, dozer, or SEE to push aside debris, allowing free passage of vehicles.</p> <p>5. The platoon clears wire obstacles.</p> <p>a. Used the ACE or dozer.</p> <p>(1) Used the blade to push wire to the side. Started at one end of the wire or where the wire had been breached.</p> <p>(2) Pushed the wire at an angle (making numerous passes, if necessary) to stop wire from becoming entangled in the road wheels.</p> <p>(3) Dug deep enough to remove pickets, if pickets were present.</p> <p>b. Used the SEE.</p> <p>(1) Backed the vehicle up to the wire.</p> <p>(2) Used the backhoe to rip the wire apart.</p> <p>(3) Lowered the backhoe onto the wire and drove forward dragging the wire along behind.</p> <p>6. The platoon clears rubble obstacles.</p> <p>a. Used the blade on the ACE or dozer to push the rubble aside.</p> <p>(1) Cut away at one side if the pile of rubble was too large to move in one pass; removed the rubble by spreading on successive passes.</p> <p>(2) Cut through the top of the rubble when the sides of the pile of rubble were not exposed and worked down until it was breached or removed.</p> <p>(3) Formed a ramp by pushing and loosening the rubble when the top of the pile of rubble was too high to reach, and then backblading with down pressure. Repeated the procedure until the top can was reached.</p> <p>(4) Used the bucket on the SEE or the ACE to pick up rubble and removed it.</p> <p>7. The platoon clears the contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Used the blade on the ACE or dozer to dig up the contaminated dirt and either removed it or pushed it aside.</p> <p>b. Used the bucket on the SEE to dig up the contaminated dirt and removed it.</p> <p>c. Decontaminated the vehicle.</p> <p>8. The platoon breaches the minefields.</p> <p>a. Breached the minefield manually.</p> <p>b. Used the ACE to breach the minefield.</p> <p>NOTE: Using the ACE to breach a minefield is not recommended nor is it the primary use of the vehicle. Using this vehicle to breach a minefield is a last resort. To prevent damage, the angled, herringbone skimming technique should be used.</p> <p>(1) Secured the hatch and ensured that no one was on the outside of the vehicle.</p> <p>(2) Began operating about 10 meters from the minefield's edge with the blade placed at a 2- to 4-inch cut.</p> <p>(3) Pushed forward to the left or right at least three vehicle lengths and stop.</p> <p>(4) Backed off to where the breaching started and performed the same cut and pushed in the opposite direction.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Backed off again and made the same cut overlapping the first cut to ensure that no area was missed, but extended at least one vehicle length beyond the first cut. (6) Repeated the above process until the vehicle had cleared a path through the minefield. NOTE: Adjust the height of the blade so that no surface is left unscraped in the ACE's pass through the minefield. Give special attention to a washboard or otherwise uneven terrain.  9. The platoon leader reports mission completion to higher headquarters according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1930.10-1001	Monitor the Calculation and Placement of Demolitions and Explosives
	01-1940.10-1002	Support the Reduction of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.10-1003	Supervise the Clearance of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.20-1002	Direct the Reduction of Complex Obstacles
	01-1940.20-1003	Direct the Clearance of Complex Obstacles
	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-1127	PREPARE AN AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1128	LOCATE MINES WITH THE AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
	052-192-3034	DIRECT A DELIBERATE MINEFIELD RECONNAISSANCE PATROL
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-192-3060	CONDUCT A BREACH OF A MINEFIELD
	052-192-4045	CONDUCT ROUTE SWEEP OPERATIONS
	052-192-4046	CONDUCT AN ASSAULT BREACH OF A MINEFIELD
	052-192-4052	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD CLEARING OPERATIONS
	052-193-1013	NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS
	052-193-1310	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION FIRING SYSTEMS
	052-193-1311	PRIME MILITARY EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-1312	CONSTRUCT DEMOLITION INITIATING SETS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-193-1313	IDENTIFY CHARACTERISTICS OF MILITARY DEMOLITIONS AND EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-2014	DETERMINE SAFE DISTANCE WHEN FIRING EXPLOSIVES
	052-193-2015	PLACE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-2016	PLACE STEEL-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-2017	PLACE BREACHING CHARGES
	052-193-2018	PLACE CRATERING CHARGES
	052-193-2030	CLEAR MISFIRES
	052-193-3022	CALCULATE TIMBER-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-3023	CALCULATE STEEL-CUTTING CHARGES
	052-193-3024	CALCULATE BREACHING CHARGES
	052-193-3054	PREPARE A DEMOLITION RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
	052-193-4040	SUPERVISE ENGINEER DEMOLITION MISSIONS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-227-1005	PERFORM OPERATOR PREVENTIVE-MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS) ON AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1200	PERFORM DOZING OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1225	DRIVE AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-1240	PERFORM SCRAPER OPERATIONS WITH AN ARMORED COMBAT EARTHMOVER (ACE), M9
	052-227-3302	DIRECT ACE DOZER/SCRAPER OPERATIONS
	052-254-1045	REMOVE TREES WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1046	REMOVE BRUSH WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1047	REMOVE STUMPS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1048	REMOVE BOULDERS WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR
	052-254-1059	EXCAVATE WITH THE SCOOP LOADER
	052-254-1061	MOVE A LOAD WITH THE SCOOP LOADER CLAMSHELL
	052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**



**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** DEFEND MINEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**TASK:** SURRENDER TO CAPTURING UNIT ON THE BATTLEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers and documents and equipment sensitive to OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal/destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PLACE AIRFIELD MATTING ON PREPARED SURFACES (05-3-0785)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)  
 (FM 5-436)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives an operation order (OPORD) to place airfield matting on a prepared surface. The mission statement specifies the runway, taxiway, and apron dimensions and completion time. The surface area is prepared. Airfield membrane and matting is pre-positioned at the site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon places airfield matting at a rate of 32.5 square meters per man-hour (for trained troops). The matting is certified for use. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the platoon leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials.		
* 2. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security.		
* 3. The platoon leader inventories pre-positioned matting to ensure that adequate stocks are on hand.		
* 4. The platoon leader inspects the airfield surface to ensure that it has been properly prepared (leveled, no depressions, and minimum grade changes). The platoon repairs or requests assistance as appropriate.		
* 5. The platoon leader organizes the platoon and assigns specific tasks according to FM 5-436.		
6. The platoon places membrane and airfield matting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located and marked the centerline of the runway, taxiway, and apron.</li> <li>b. Placed the matting according to FM 5-436.</li> <li>c. The Army Aviation Safety Officer or Air Force Combat Control Team certifies the matting for use.</li> </ul>		
* 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1990.10-1001	Design the Construction or Repair of Theater of Operations (TO) Airfields
	01-1990.10-1004	Supervise Site Selection and Layout
	01-1990.20-1002	Direct Construction Site Drainage
	01-2000.10-1001	Interpret Plans and Specifications
	01-2050.10-1001	Reconcile Project Work Progress With the Construction Plans, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1002	Prepare a Construction Plan, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1003	Use Construction Management Techniques
	01-2050.20-1001	Direct a Construction Project
	01-2240.20-1001	Coordinate Engineer-Unique Support Logistic Requirements
	052-195-3112	Supervise hasty airfield repair
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4080	Plan mobility operations (helicopter landing zones, airstrips)
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY-AREA ACTIVITIES (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's assembly-area (AA) activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REPLACE DAMAGED AIRFIELD MATTING (05-3-0786)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)  
 (FM 5-436)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been directed to replace damaged airfield matting. The area to be repaired has been determined. All required materials and construction equipment organic to the unit are available. California bearing ratios (CBR) values are provided. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon replaces matting according to the procedures outlined in Technical Manual (TM) 5-337 to allow sustained operation of the airfield.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified accuracy of the construction plans and specifications.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the bill of materials (BOM) included all required materials for complete construction.</li> <li>c. Conducted platoon movement after the operation order (OPORD) was issued to subordinates and all preparations had been completed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader/sergeant establishes jobsite security.</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader, when needed, submits requests for changes to improve or correct construction plans and specifications according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>4. The platoon removes damaged matting according to the procedures outlined in FM 5-430-00-1.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used applicable procedures for the type of mat being replaced.</li> <li>b. Used the applicable method, depending on the severity of the damage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The platoon repairs the subbase.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Restored subgrade stability to ensure that the traffic was supported and undue settling after the repair was prevented.</li> <li>b. Ensured that depressions, potholes, and ruts were filled and compacted to specifications.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the surface was graded to conform to the crown and transverse slope design specifications.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. The platoon repairs or replaces the damaged membrane.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Slit the failed surface area to form an X and folded the four flaps back.</li> <li>b. Placed a new piece of membrane under the membrane surfacing so that it extended about 2 feet on all sides.</li> <li>c. Applied adhesive to the top of the new membrane and the bottom of the old membrane.</li> <li>d. Allowed the adhesive to become tacky (2 to 5 minutes).</li> <li>e. Folded the flaps back to their original position.</li> <li>f. Allowed the adhesive to set for about 15 minutes.</li> <li>g. Rolled the patched area with a rubber-tired vehicle.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
7. The platoon replaces the mat according to the procedures in TM 5-337 for the type of mat used.		
* 8. The platoon leader/sergeant submits a status report to higher headquarters according to the unit's SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-1990.10-1001	Design the Construction or Repair of Theater of Operations (TO) Airfields
	01-1990.10-1004	Supervise Site Selection and Layout
	01-1990.20-1001	Direct Horizontal Construction
	01-1990.20-1002	Direct Construction Site Drainage
	01-2000.10-1001	Interpret Plans and Specifications
	01-2050.10-1001	Reconcile Project Work Progress With the Construction Plans, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1002	Prepare a Construction Plan, Schedule, and Budget
	01-2050.10-1003	Use Construction Management Techniques
	01-2050.20-1001	Direct a Construction Project
	01-2240.20-1001	Coordinate Engineer-Unique Support Logistic Requirements
	052-194-4013	Plan engineer support to security actions stability operations(SASO)
	052-195-3112	Supervise hasty airfield repair
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-236-2112	ESTIMATE ACTIVITY MANPOWER REQUIRED
	052-236-2113	ESTIMATE ACTIVITY DURATION
	052-239-3029	SCHEDULE WORK
052-256-4140	PREPARE A BILL OF MATERIALS	
STP 5-62E12-SM-TG	052-254-1044	RECOVER EQUIPMENT WITH THE CRAWLER TRACTOR WINCH
	052-254-1055	SPREAD PILES OF LOOSE MATERIAL WITH THE MOTORIZED GRADER
STP 5-62J12-SM-TG	052-253-1051	COMPACT LOOSE MATERIAL WITH HIGH SPEED TAMPING FOOT COMPACTOR
	052-253-1053	ROLL MATERIAL WITH SELF-PROPELLED VIBRATORY ROLLER
STP 5-62N34-SM-TG	052-256-3020	INTERPRET A CONSTRUCTION PRINT
	052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	052-256-3045	DIRECT MOTOR GRADER OPERATIONS
	052-256-3046	DIRECT COMPACTION OPERATIONS
	052-256-4141	DETERMINE EVENTS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4142	ESTIMATE EVENT DURATIONS IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT
	052-256-4143	SCHEDULE WORK IN A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY (05-3-0904.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-34) (FM 71-1)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. This task is performed during darkness and daylight and in all weather conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions which provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The enemy's presence is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4 below.</li> <li>(2) If the unit was working alone or in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2 below.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ul> <p>2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a covered and concealed position.</li> <li>b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire (see Field Manual (FM) 71-1).</li> <li>c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector to identify enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</li> <li>b. Located, marked, and reported any mines/unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Identified the observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</li> <li>c. Identified the crew-served weapon positions.</li> <li>d. Established the withdrawal routes.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Dismounted personnel positions.</p> <p>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</p> <p>g. Established the sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</p> <p>h. Designated which fighting positions, OPs, or patrols were manned full time. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided early warning and close-in security.</li> <li>(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</li> <li>(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</li> <li>(4) Operated according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</li> <li>(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</li> </ol> <p>i. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of a position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</li> <li>(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</li> </ol> <p>j. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</li> <li>(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual. Ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The unit's TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completion of the range cards and sector sketches.</p> <p>k. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher headquarters.</p> <p>l. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk-management process.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on the site with a 100 percent occupation of position.</p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept its individual weapons within close reach.</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</li> <li>e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher headquarters.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR-ASSAULT OPERATIONS (05-3-0906)  
(FM 90-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to conduct an air-assault operation. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force who has planned the five phases of the air-assault operation which include the ground, landing, air movement, loading, and staging plans. The platoon must provide their security. Both friendly and enemy units have direct fire and combat air support (CAS) available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon's main body is not surprised at the pick-up zone (PZ) or landing zone (LZ) by the enemy and is prepared for movement at the time and place specified in the order. Each helicopter is loaded within 30 seconds of the crew chief's signal. Sufficient (75 percent minimum) leaders, personnel, and equipment are moved to the LZ to accomplish the mission. The platoon moves off the LZ within 10 minutes of arrival without compromising the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>2. The platoon leader organizes the loads based on the allowable cargo load as stated in the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated chinks and chalk leaders.</li> <li>b. Maintained tactical integrity by keeping squads together on the same helicopter.</li> <li>c. Maintained self-sufficiency of loads, such as keeping machine guns and their crews on the same helicopter with the ammunition and components.</li> <li>d. Cross-loaded key personnel and weapons. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant were loaded on separate helicopters.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The platoon leader briefs helicopter landing formations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the platoon's action to secure the PZ, assembly areas, the LZ, and rally points.</li> <li>b. Included the platoon's action to secure the rendezvous points, rally points, and straggler control points.</li> <li>c. Included the indirect-fire support in the areas of vulnerability.</li> <li>d. Included the type of helicopter and allowable loads. For example, UH 60 - 8,000 pounds and CH 47B and CH 47C - 20,000 pounds gross weight.</li> <li>e. Included safety measures, such as keeping the body low when approaching and departing a helicopter, especially on slopes, weapons on safe, seat belts fastened, and keeping hand grenades secure.</li> <li>f. Included the emergency procedures to be used for downed helicopter both for personnel and the remainder of the unit according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Included actions when the helicopter lands at the LZ.</li> <li>h. Ensured that bumped personnel and equipment reported to the straggler control point.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The chalk leaders inform personnel in the chalk when to load and where to sit on the helicopter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Outlined the procedures to be used in an emergency such as enemy direct fire or downed helicopter procedures according to the unit's SOP.</li> <li>b. Briefed actions to be taken when the helicopter landed at the LZ according to the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon leader establishes the priority of material and personnel loading based on loading plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that loads would not interfere with dismounting personnel at the LZ.</li> <li>b. Ensured that external loads were quickly removed to prevent interference with the landing of the helicopter.</li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon moves to the PZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by using the movement techniques consistent with the enemy situation.</li> <li>b. Secured assigned hasty positions at the PZ while awaiting the arrival of the helicopter.</li> <li>c. Positioned units according to the load plan.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon members load aircraft when directed to do so by the chalk leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the load plan.</li> <li>b. Approached the helicopter from the side at a double time.</li> <li>c. Adjusted to changes in the number and type of helicopters received.</li> <li>d. Maintained security during loading. Repositioned defensive positions as necessary for multiple lifts.</li> <li>e. Ensured that safety measures (by the leaders) that were outlined in subtask 3e were adhered to.</li> </ul> <p>8. The platoon arrives and secures the LZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted the helicopter immediately after it landed.</li> <li>b. Moved out 20 meters from the sides of the helicopter and assumed prone firing positions facing outward.</li> <li>c. Watched for the enemy and waited for the helicopters to depart the LZ.</li> <li>d. Moved to the assigned positions to provide all-round security.</li> </ul> <p>9. The platoon consolidates and prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications with higher headquarters within 10 minutes.</li> <li>b. Accounted for all personnel and equipment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties (if any) on departing helicopters.</li> <li>e. Moved off the LZ within 20 minutes of arrival.</li> </ul> <p>10. The platoon continues the mission according to the ground tactical plan or as modified based on the ground situation.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS IN MILITARY OPERATIONS ON URBANIZED TERRAIN (MOUT) (05-3-1241)  
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is supporting an infantry task-force (TF) defense in MOUT. The enemy is expected to attack with mounted or dismounted forces up to battalion strength, supported by indirect fire and close air. The infantry company will be reinforced with additional antiarmor assets if the enemy is armored or mechanized. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts defensive operations in urbanized terrain that will provide protection, mobility, and fighting positions for the infantry task force, while diverting enemy forces into kill zones and denying access to advantageous positions in urbanized terrain. The engineer effort is completed according to the infantry commander's intent and no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a tentative plan. The plan included the following key items:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified sectors or boundaries.</li> <li>(2) Identified possible locations of primary, alternate, and supplementary battle positions.</li> <li>(3) Incorporated built-up areas such as forests, hills, or other terrain features, used in conjunction with other obstacles to control avenues of approach.</li> <li>(4) Analyzed the elements of urban development in conjunction with natural terrain in order to determine how to enhance weapons effectiveness to disrupt, block, canalize, and fix the enemy.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Conducted a joint reconnaissance (on the ground) with the maneuver commander. During the reconnaissance the platoon leader identified the following:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Cover and conceal routes to and between all positions (through buildings, basements, sewers, and service tunnels).</li> <li>(2) Mounted and dismounted enemy avenues of approach (streets, alleys, rooftops, sewers, underground steam and power tunnels, vacant lots, and demolished buildings).</li> <li>(3) Dead space.</li> <li>(4) The location for command posts (CPs) and observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>(5) The location for primary, alternate, and supplementary battle positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Advised the maneuver commander of the engineer effort required to support the maneuver plan.</li> <li>d. Finalized the plan based on the ground reconnaissance and prepared an obstacle plan.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon denies access to underground systems (sewerage).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced wire obstacles along with booby traps to prevent removal.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Emplaced antipersonnel mines such as the claymore which can be command detonated.</p> <p>c. Destroyed underground systems with explosives, if not to be used for access between defensive positions.</p> <p>3. The platoon denies access to streets to prevent enemy fire and movement.</p> <p>a. Created crater obstacles.</p> <p>b. Placed rubble on top of, or welded, manholes to prevent access to underground systems.</p> <p>c. Concealed explosives prepared for command detonation under streets where enemy forces were expected to approach.</p> <p>d. Emplaced log obstacles or expedient crib obstacles using junk vehicles and rubble.</p> <p>4. The platoon denies enemy access to buildings not being used as defensive positions.</p> <p>a. Blocked doors and windows with material that was not easily removed such as rubble or heavy boards.</p> <p>b. Booby trapped floors, stairways, windows, and entrances.</p> <p>c. Rubbled buildings with explosives and emplaced mines and booby traps.</p> <p>d. Emplaced explosives or flame trap to be detonated after enemy forces had occupied the building.</p> <p>5. The platoon denies enemy access to rooftops.</p> <p>a. Emplaced barbed tape or wire obstacles around the edges of the rooftops.</p> <p>b. Emplaced antipersonnel explosives and or claymore mines.</p> <p>c. Placed antihelicopter obstacles such as hedgehogs, concertina wire, and barbed wire strung on 5-foot high supports.</p> <p>6. The platoon denies enemy access to back yards and rear areas of defensive positions.</p> <p>a. Emplaced antipersonnel mines.</p> <p>b. Emplaced barbed tape or wire obstacles.</p> <p>c. Emplaced expedient flame devices in the direction of enemy approach.</p> <p>(1) Concealed an exploding 5-gallon flame device with an M-4 burster placed inside, connected to a blasting cap and initiated with an available firing system or used a white phosphorus (WP) grenade attached to a container, wrapped with barbed wire to create a fragmentary exploding flame device initiated by pull or trip wire.</p> <p>(2) Prepared flame fougasse using a metal container for an 8-inch howitzer propelling charge or a 55-gallon drum containing thickened fuel buried in a 45-degree angle and deep enough to accommodate initiating explosives with only enough exposed to allow fuel to be expelled. The platoon covered the fougasse with sandbags or expedient materials to ensure that the flaming fuel is spread outwards.</p> <p>7. Records the location of all mines and booby traps (on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1R) and forwards to higher headquarters.</p> <p>8. The platoon breaches exterior walls to provide mobility and firing positions for defending troops.</p> <p>NOTE: If time permits and economy of explosives are necessary, use the breaching formula <math>P = R3KC</math> and Figure 9-9 of Field Manual (FM) 5-34.</p> <p>a. Determined the thickness of the wall to be breached to find the value of R3 (radius).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Determined the type of material to be breached, the value of K (material factor), using the Figure 9-9 in FM 5-34.</p> <p>c. Determined the value of C, the method of placement, from the table in Figure 9-9 in FM 5-34.</p> <p>d. Cut reinforcing bars using the formula for steel-cutting charges, <math>P = 3/8A</math> for bars 2 inches thick or over and the formula <math>P = D^2</math> (D squared) to cut alloy or steel 2 inches thick or less.</p> <p>9. The platoon breaches exterior walls using the rule of thumb when time is critical and economy of explosives is not a primary consideration. NOTE: Normally buildings have walls 61 centimeters or less thick and assume exterior walls are constructed of reinforced concrete.</p> <p>a. Tied or taped 10 pounds of composition C4 (C4) on a pole and placed it against the target between waist and chest high and detonated.</p> <p>b. Cut reinforcing bars using 0.5 kilogram (1 pound) of trinitrotoluene (TNT) for bars less than 2.5 centimeters in diameter and 0.9 kilogram (2 pounds) of TNT for bars 2.5 centimeters to 5.1 centimeters (2 inches) in diameter.</p> <p>c. Primed and detonated charges ensuring personnel and equipment safety by adhering to a safe distance for the amount of explosives being detonated as specified by FM 5-34. These distances will be modified when in combat and when troops are in other buildings, around corners, or protected by intervening walls.</p> <p>10. Breach interior walls (prepare mouse holes) to provide mobility for defending troops.</p> <p>a. Cut a block of C4 into three equal parts and placed on the wall at an equal distance, from neck to knee height and 4 feet from the door frame.</p> <p>b. Primed with detonating cord or three blasting caps to obtain simultaneous detonation.</p> <p>c. Detonated explosives to create a hole large enough for a man to get through.</p> <p>11. The platoon breaches floors and ceilings to provide mobility for defending troops using the technique for preparing mouse holes in interior walls.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-1314	Construct urban breaching charges
	052-193-1315	OPERATE URBAN BREACHING TOOLS
	052-193-2180	Direct placement of urban breaching charges
	052-193-3038	Instal booby traps
	052-193-3552	Calculate urban breaching charges
	052-193-4120	Supervise urban breaching
	052-194-4012	Plan engineer suport to a mobil defense

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-194-4016	Plan engineer support to defensive operations in urban environment
	052-195-2010	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF FIGHTING POSITIONS IN URBAN TERRAIN
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-195-4081	Supervise construction of obstacles in a urban area
	052-195-4082	Conduct a building analysis
	052-199-3005	Direct construction of theater of operations buildings
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4008	PREPARE A OBSTACLE PLAN
	052-239-3030	READ CONSTRUCTION PRINTS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** IMPROVE A VEHICLE LANE THROUGH A MINEFIELD (05-4-0105)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The maneuver company encounters a minefield and conducts an in-stride breach to pass attacking vehicles. The engineer squad is directed to improve the lane for the company. The squad has its organic assets and sufficient demolition to accomplish the task. The maneuver force provides on-site security and the lane is not under enemy fire. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon widens, proofs (ensures that there are no mines in the lanes), and marks the lanes to allow maneuver forces to continue the mission. The platoon sustains no casualties from mines or booby traps. Friendly forces using the lanes sustain no casualties to mines or booby traps. The platoon clears the lanes according to the rates specified in Field Manual (FM) 5-34. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The squad leader determines the lane width supporting the commander's maneuver scheme (8 meters for one-way and 16 meters for two-way vehicle traffic).</p> <p>* 2. The squad leader selects the method to improve the lane, taking into account personnel, equipment, safety, and time.                      NOTE: Explosive breaching using hand-emplaced charges is the quickest, most efficient method. Manual breaching (removal by hand) is least preferred because it is the slowest and most hazardous method.</p> <p>* 3. The squad leader organizes the squad for lane improvement.                      NOTE: Explosive breaching organizes the squad into detecting, marking, and explosive-placement personnel. Manual breaching organizes the squad into detecting, marking, and mine-removal personnel.</p> <p>4. The squad improves the lane to the width supporting the maneuver scheme.</p> <p>5. The squad leader supervises safety procedures, including the use of protective clothing, limited movement in the minefield, and proper dispersion of personnel.</p> <p>6. The squad members locate mines by probing or by electronic detector. They mark the mine locations and place charges or remove the mines by grappling hook.</p> <p>7. The squad leader ensures that the detector operators are relieved every 20 minutes.</p> <p>8. The squad leader ensures that the detector operators work at least 8 meters apart.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The squad leader ensures that all personnel have taken cover or are lying prone at least 50 meters from the mines during removal operations. All personnel remain in protective positions for 30 seconds after the squad completes removal operations to allow for possible time-delay fuses.</p> <p>10. The squad, depending on the time and the situation, fuses a line-main firing system to detonate several or all explosives or detonates each charge individually.</p> <p>11. The squad leader evacuates all personnel to a safe distance or location before detonating the explosives.</p> <p>12. The squad, using detectors or other methods, verifies the absence of mines in the lane.</p> <p>13. The squad marks the improved lane.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the entrance and exit, as a minimum.</li> <li>b. Used available resources to begin temporary marking.</li> <li>c. Improved the marking, if time and assets permit, by using the standard minefield marking set number 2 or the M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS).</li> <li>d. Marked the sides of the lane to prevent vehicles or personnel from straying into the minefield, if time and assets permitted.</li> </ul> <p>14. The squad leader records the lane improvement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355.</li> <li>b. Marked the form "revised."</li> </ul> <p>15. The squad leader reports work-status changes and improvement completion to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported work-status changes and work completion according to the unit's standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> <li>b. Reported the completion of the improvement within 10 minutes of finishing the marking procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-1135	LOCATE MINES BY PROBING
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING
	052-195-4065	OPERATIONS
	052-218-3002	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL
		PLANNING
		Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-192-4052	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD CLEARING OPERATIONS
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** MARK A MINEFIELD (05-4-0110)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The squad, separately or as part of the emplacing unit, receives the mission to mark a friendly minefield that is being emplaced or is already in place. Squad members determine the location of the minefield from the emplacing party personnel, Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1355 and 1355-1-R, or a scatterable mine record and report. The logistic planning for the marking of the minefield is done. The squad has the necessary material to mark the minefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The squad marks the location of minefield boundaries, gaps, and lanes so that there are no friendly casualties to mines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The squad leader organizes personnel and directs members to assemble all equipment and materials.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the squad into teams to drive pickets, string wire, post signs, and carry materials for uninterrupted marking.</li> <li>b. Positioned materials at intervals around the minefield to limit hauling requirements. Materials included wire (barbed or concertina), pickets, mine warning signs, a standard mine marking set, and an M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The teams carry wire gauntlets, wire cutters, sledge hammers, or an expedient picket-driving device to ensure smooth construction of the fence.</li> <li>3. The squad marks the minefield boundaries.</li> <li>* 4. The squad leader places the first fence picket at least 15 meters from the right-rear boundary marker.</li> <li>5. The squad members install pickets in a pattern to avoid indicating the exact boundary of the minefield.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Do not install pickets closer than 15 meters to any mine.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The squad leader determines the boundaries of the minefield from the scatterable mine record or from the emplacing unit when marking a scatterable minefield.</li> <li>7. The squad installs pickets no closer than 60 meters from the centerline of the first and last belt for the Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS), wide-area munition (WAM), and Volcano minefields.</li> <li>8. The squad installs pickets no closer than 15 meters from the starting and ending row markers.</li> <li>9. For artillery-delivered scatterable minefields, the squad installs pickets around the established safety zones identified on the scatterable-mine record and report.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. The squad installs two strands of wire concurrently, one ankle high and the second waist high around the minefield, and places mine warning signs 10 to 50 meters apart on the upper wire.		
11. The squad marks safe lanes and gaps through the minefield.		
12. The squad uses the following guidance for safe lanes and gaps: footpaths are 1 meter wide; one-way vehicle traffic is 8 meters wide; two-way vehicle traffic is 16 meters wide; and gaps are greater than 100 meters wide.		
13. The squad's members mark the safety lanes in forward areas by using rock piles, short wooden stakes, and so forth, so as not to expose the lane locations to the enemy.		
14. The squad's members mark lanes in the rear areas similar to boundaries and emplace illuminous marking devices (such as HEMMS, standard marking mines set) visible only from the friendly side of the minefield.		
15. The squad leader reports mission completion to the next higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-1021	LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
	052-192-1128	LOCATE MINES WITH THE AN/PSS-12 MINE DETECTOR
	052-192-1230	IDENTIFY MINES AND FIRING DEVICES, FRIENDLY AND ENEMY
	052-192-3034	DIRECT A DELIBERATE MINEFIELD RECONNAISSANCE PATROL
	052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM
	052-192-3137	DIRECT A ROW MINEFIELD LAYING PARTY
	052-192-3142	DIRECT OPERATION OF A GROUND VOLCANO SYSTEM
	052-192-3165	SUPERVISE INSTALLATION OF A VOLCANO MINEFIELD
	052-192-3166	SUPERVISE INSTALLATION OF MOPMS MINEFIELD
	052-192-4052	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD CLEARING OPERATIONS
	052-192-4053	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD BREACHING OPERATIONS
	052-193-1013	NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**ELEMENT:** NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CREATE AN ABATIS (05-4-0205)  
 (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is ordered to create an abatis. A Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R is completed and available. The site selected complies with the requirements for an effective abatis. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The squad creates an abatis within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The abatis is a minimum of 75 meters deep and tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. There are 10 to 25 trees on each side of the road. Seventy-five percent of the trees are attached to their stumps. The abatis stops or delays an enemy main-battle tank (MBT). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The squad leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report.                      NOTE: This information can be provided by the squad leader, or collected from other sources such as the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or other units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detailed a plan and side-view sketch showing the overall dimensions and lines of cut.</li> <li>b. Determined the spacing between trees to be cut, the tree diameters, the amount of explosives required for each tree, and examples of charge placement.</li> <li>c. Detailed a sketch showing the firing initiation system.</li> <li>d. Itemized a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types, a list of equipment, and an estimation of time and labor needed to prepare and fire the demolition.</li> </ul> <p>2. To minimize the time spent on site, the squad prepares materials and equipment for the demolition; for example, primes blocks of explosive with detonating cord and prepares individual charges.</p> <p>3. The squad leader issues orders to the squad using the five-paragraph field order format. The orders emphasize site security and noise and light discipline and ensures that each member knows exactly what to do.</p> <p>4. The squad moves to the obstacle location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that no personnel rode in the rear of a vehicle carrying explosives.</li> <li>b. Carried the blasting caps in a separate vehicle.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: If this is not possible, place the caps in a closed metal can; carry them in the front of the vehicle and carry the explosives in the rear.</p> <p>* 5. The squad leader selects the trees to be cut based on anticipated enemy vehicles. The trees are measured at a point on the trunk 1.5 meters above the ground.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected trees approximately 60 centimeters in diameter to oppose tracked vehicles.</li> <li>b. Selected trees spaced 3 to 4 meters apart to provide sufficient obstacle density.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. This prevents vehicles, especially tracks, from driving over the tops of fallen trees.</li> <li>2. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct or indirect fire and is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</li> </ol> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The squad creates an abatis using pioneer tools. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cut the trees on one side of the trail or road. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Felled the trees at a 45-degree angle to the road with the tops toward the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Cut the trees 1.5 meters above the ground.</li> <li>(3) Did not cut the trees completely through the trunk; allowed the trunk to remain attached to the stump to impede the enemy in clearing the obstacle.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Used the same procedures on the opposite side of the road; cut the trees and felled them on the top of the previously cut trees.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The squad creates an abatis with explosives. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a test shot on a tree. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Calculated the charge using <math>P = D^2/50</math>— where: P = pounds of TNT, D = diameter of tree in inches at 1.5 meters from the ground.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Formula is pounds equals diameter squared divided by 50.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Removed the bark before placing the charge.</li> <li>(3) Placed the charge 1.5 meters above the ground on the side of the direction of fall.</li> <li>(4) Primed the charge in the center of the outside face of the explosives. Ensured that the charge was twice as wide as it was high and 2.5 or 5.0 centimeters thick.</li> <li>(5) Attached the charge firmly with tape, wire, or twine.</li> </ol> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Fired the test shot and adjusted the charges as necessary. Calculated the charge for each tree using the test-shot data.</li> <li>c. Placed charges on all the trees to be felled. See subtask 7a.</li> <li>d. Laid ring mains and attached branch lines with a girth hitch and one extra turn. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked the initiation system for breaks.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the detonating cord, ring mains, and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other except where connected by knots or detonating cord clips.</li> <li>(3) Placed two ring mains on each side of the road if the charges were dual primed.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and fire.</li> <li>9. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a preliminary target) and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that it is ready to execute the target. If permission has been given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed.</li> <li>*10. The squad leader may turn over the target to a demolition firing party. Whenever possible, the turn over procedures are as detailed as those found in part 4 of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See Field Manual (FM) 5-250.</li> <li>11. The squad executes the target.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
12. The squad improves the abatis, if time permits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Laid the mines and booby traps (if authority was given) along the enemy side approaches and in the first 10 meters of the obstacle. Recorded the placement on DA Form 1355.</li> <li>b. Used wire rope to join the trees together beginning on the enemy side.</li> <li>c. Laid concertina wire to enhance the mines and booby traps on the enemy side.</li> </ul> NOTE: It can be laid throughout the abatis.		
*13. The squad leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results to higher HQ, to include the obstacle depth and possible bypass routes.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-193-3055	PREPARE/COMPILE NONNUCLEAR DEMOLITION TARGET FOLDER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.



**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT TARGET TURNOVER (05-4-0920)  
(FM 5-250) (STANAG 2017) (STANAG 2123)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is performing tactical operations under variable mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) conditions. The unit has employed targets but has not executed. The unit is required to turn over the targets to another unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The squad provides all information necessary for the receiving unit to successfully execute the target according to the obstacle folder. The receiving unit understands the execution procedures and other information. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The squad leader meets the receiving unit and confirms its authority to receive the target.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified himself by name, rank, unit, and duty position.</li> <li>b. Verified the unit and the person receiving the obstacle folder by using challenges and passwords, identification (ID) cards, or written authorization orders.</li> <li>c. Directed the placement of the receiving unit's vehicles and soldiers.</li> </ul> <p>2. The squad leader briefs the mission to the receiving unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that who, what, when, and where were covered.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the receiving unit understood the execution order.</li> </ul> <p>3. The squad leader briefs the receiving unit on the tactical situation and provides an obstacle overlay with the target sketch and grid coordinates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the terrain around the target.</li> <li>b. Provided the enemy situation such as the direction of approach and the expected type and size of the unit.</li> <li>c. Stated the friendly situation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified adjacent and forward units.</li> <li>(2) Briefed on the location of any security element to include the listening post (LP) and observation post (OP).</li> <li>(3) Provided information on which unit, element, or vehicle should be the last to pass through the target (if known).</li> <li>(4) Pointed out the preplanned artillery targets.</li> <li>(5) Identified the withdrawal routes following execution.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Covered the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) situation or condition.</li> </ul> <p>4. The squad leader briefs the obstacle initiation procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated status: reserve or preliminary.</li> <li>b. Stated when to initiate.</li> <li>c. Identified who would give the order to close or fire the target.</li> <li>d. Explained how the order to close or fire the target would be given, to include the method of communication and code words.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
e. Provided emergency instructions to be followed if the target was overrun prior to initiation or target misfires.  5. The squad leader indicates the location of minefields. a. Briefed using the information that was on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355 and DA Form 1355-1-R. (1) Described the type of minefield. (2) Related the boundaries. (3) Described the width and marking of safe lanes. (4) Showed the location of the mines and fuzes required to close the safe lanes. (5) Reported the estimated time required to close the lane. b. Pointed out all of the locations physically.  6. The squad leader reviews the demolition obstacle folder and physically points out all of the locations. a. Described the type of target. b. Pointed out the location of charges. c. Walked the initiation system line. d. Pointed out the main firing circuit and the reserve circuit. e. Identified the firing points. f. Described the present state of readiness. g. Briefed the procedures required to change the state of readiness. h. Briefed the procedures required to fire the demolitions. i. Described traffic control. j. Specified the estimated time needed to change the state of readiness. k. Specified the estimated time required to fire the demolition.  7. The squad leader reports on the completion of turnover. a. Reported to the commander of the demolition guard. b. Reported to the maneuver unit commander. c. Reported to his own unit.  8. The squad leader provides written target-turnover documentation to the receiving unit; completed with name, rank, unit, date, time, and signature. a. Provided the target folder and/or demolition order. b. Provided the minefield record (DA Form 1355 and DA Form 1355-1-R).		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-3154	Conduct target turnover
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: DEFEAT OBSTACLES (5-OPFOR-0009)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PREPARE CREW-SERVED WEAPONS FIGHTING POSITIONS (05-5-0302)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The squad leader has selected the location, and the platoon leader has approved the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crew constructs crew-served weapon fighting positions providing coverage of the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The crew constructs a machine-gun position having a primary and secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the unit's front), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire.</li> <li>b. Dug the position in an inverted "T" shape with a firing platform in each corner.</li> <li>c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire.</li> <li>d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection if it did not interfere with sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon.</li> <li>f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon.</li> <li>g. Reduced the weapon's height by digging the tripod platform down as much as possible, yet keeping the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire.</li> <li>h. Dug a one-soldier fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench.</li> <li>i. Dug the hole to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</li> <li>j. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of one entrenching tool at both ends of the hole.</li> <li>k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</li> <li>l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</li> <li>m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The crew constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Dug the position in a "V" shape, with the firing position in the apex of the "V."</p> <p>b. Constructed the position following procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The crew constructs a 90-millimeter recoilless rifle position; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle-blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. The backblast area was cleared of highly-combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the crew built cover on the flanks.</p> <p>c. Dug the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>d. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of an entrenching tool at each end of the hole.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the rifle stood at the front of the position.</p> <p>f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</p> <p>g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	052-225-3305	ESTIMATE REQUIREMENTS FOR VEHICLES FIGHTING POSITIONS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

### TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

### TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

### TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REACT TO UNEXPLODED ORDNANCE (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16) (STP 21-24-SMCT)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit recognizes the UXO hazard. a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions.  * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures.  * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.  * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured the UXO was visible from all markers.  * 5. The unit reports the UXO hazard. a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-194-4013	Plan engineer support to security actions stability operations(SASO)
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	093-403-5010	RECOGNIZE MILITARY EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE BY TYPE
	093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD
	093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** USE PASSIVE AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 and/or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all the available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the personnel and the equipment to limit vulnerability. Air situational awareness (SA) was achieved by the unit's monitoring of the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect the personnel and the vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air-defense early-warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the vehicles and the equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected column interval based on the instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit personnel use passive air-defense measures when occupying or displacing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360 degrees, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED-ARMS AIR-DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS (44-1-C221.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. The unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 and or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the unit to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to the allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed the personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Sent the PIRs to the higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTES:</p> <p>(1) The aim points for the propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for the helicopters.</p> <p>(2) Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters.</p> <p>(3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and the machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>(4) Establish the preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>(5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results.</p> <p>TYPE AERIAL PLATFORMS COURSE AIM POINT</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Crossing Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Overhead Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Directly at you Slightly above aerial platforms nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Crossing One-half football field in front of nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Directly at you Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Hovering Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the unit's commander.</p> <p>* 2. The leaders direct small arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth, or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</li> <li>d. Engaged the nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</li> <li>e. Identified the threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>f. Reported all aerial platforms action to the higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Prepared the unit to engage on the orders of the senior leader.</li> <li>h. Engaged the unit (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</li> <li>i. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement of aircraft.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>d. Ensured that personnel assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to the higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP.</li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The unit leader, or noncommissioned officers (NCOs), directs small arms air-defense measures during the convoy movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road, or off the road if possible. Turned to covered, concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals, or increased the interval or dispersion. The vehicle operators used evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the unit to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified the aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the attack.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to the higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for the specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the missions or conditions changed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high-, medium-, or low-risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The commander or leader(s) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements prior to all of the operations.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element carries out the safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings prior to all of the operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all of the mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Safety is a part of realism-- and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (see Field Manual [FM] 25-100).</p> <p>2. Risk: FM 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the Air-Land Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-3071	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** COORDINATE FOR FOOD-SERVICE SUPPORT (05-2-0051)  
 (FM 10-23) (AR 30-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food-service support is required. The unit is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company commander or food-service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel.</li> <li>b. Identified locations and times for meals. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission.</li> <li>c. Considered consolidation of subunits.</li> <li>d. Determined the type of rations based on mission constraints, that is A-, T- or meal, ready-to-eat (MRE) rations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The company commander or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a feeding report and forwarded the report to the brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the nature of the requirement.</li> <li>(2) Established the date the meals were required.</li> <li>(3) Determined the total number of meals required.</li> <li>(4) Established the time of pick up or delivery of the meals.</li> <li>(5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed the brigade S4 of any changes that would affect the operation. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times and locations for pick up or delivery.</li> <li>c. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours prior to the meal, if possible.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The FSO supervises Class I operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the company's standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan.</li> <li>b. Served the hot meals as soon after pickup or delivery as possible.</li> <li>c. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if in danger of being attacked.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all soldiers had their mess kits available, if used.</li> <li>d. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if attack was unlikely.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter (17-foot) intervals to reduce casualty potential. f. Ensured that soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack. g. Established washing facilities. h. Disposed of all trash/garbage properly.  4. The company commander ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed.  5. The FSO ensures that proper signature head-count and cash-collection procedures are used during the tactical operation. NOTE: One-line entries may be authorized during training in the field where the collection of signatures is impractical as determined by the company commander or FSO (for example, limited feeding time, troop dispersion, or weather conditions).  6. The company commander ensures that the food containers are promptly returned and all trash/garbage is properly disposed of.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT COMBAT REFUELING OPERATIONS (05-2-1024)  
 (FM 10-67-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit to be refueled has selected and secured a refueling area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit refuels the vehicles without affecting ongoing operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation. The XO or the 1SG--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for a bulk-fuel supply, according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Selected a refueling point centralized to the work sites. The refueling point had good cover or concealment locations and good entrance and exit routes.</li> </ul> <p>2. The refueling personnel supports the unit according to the established schedule.</p> <p>3. The refueling personnel establishes the fuel point. The refueling personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM).</li> <li>b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily-available location.</li> <li>c. Established traffic-control patterns to minimize congestion.</li> </ul> <p>4. The company personnel conduct the refueling operations. The company personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turned off the vehicle's engines.</li> <li>b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle.</li> <li>c. Issued packaged petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) items, as needed.</li> <li>d. Maintained dispersion, basing the spacing on the terrain; at a minimum, maintained spacing of 50 meters.</li> <li>e. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>f. Observed safety procedures.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates for bulk refueling for the fuel truck. The XO or the 1SG--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the bulk refueling point.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed.</li> <li>c. Restocked onboard packaged POL items.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The company leaders monitor the refueling process.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** ESTABLISH UNIT MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (05-2-1131)  
 (FM 9-43-1) (DA PAM 738-750) (FM 20-3)  
 (FM 63-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company has relocated, and unit maintenance operations must be established. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Maintenance facilities are established. The maintenance section is equipped to repair and recover the unit's vehicles in time to support ongoing operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-area protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The maintenance officer or the motor sergeant selects a maintenance site. 2. The maintenance personnel prepare the maintenance site. The maintenance personnel-- a. Checked the area for mines, booby traps, and trip flares. b. Established security procedures (including checkpoints) to ensure that only authorized personnel entered the area. c. Designed the layout for the control, management, and support of maintenance operations. d. Designed a one-way traffic pattern in and out of the area. 3. The maintenance personnel establish the unit maintenance facility. The maintenance personnel-- a. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment. b. Established communications. c. Erected maintenance tents and medium general-purpose tents. d. Installed lighting sets. e. Positioned power generators to reduce the noise and the fire hazards. f. Parked the vehicles facing the exits. g. Maintained noise and light discipline in the maintenance area. h. Ensured that the vehicles were dispersed properly and secured at all times. i. Provided accessible fire points and alarms. j. Prepared petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) storage facilities. Disposed of the contaminated POL products according to the procedures directed by higher headquarters. k. Ensured that maintenance publications were current and available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-2230.10-1001	Supervise the Maintenance of Engineer Equipment
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK: CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT RESUPPLY OPERATIONS (05-3-1021)  
 (FM 63-1) (FM 63-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer platoon is given a mission to support a maneuver element in daylight and darkness. The platoon has all of its table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) and basic load. Any resupply to the TOE and basic load is by ground or air. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon receives required resupplies by ground or air to sustain operations to accomplish the mission. The platoon's mission is not hindered by any lack of supplies or ammunition.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon leader anticipates resupply needs and ensures that requests are submitted early so that resupply and maintenance do not affect the mission. The platoon--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the equipment status according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Reported the supply status according to the unit's SOP.</li> <li>c. Submitted reports following major changes in status which impaired resupply accomplishment according to the unit's SOP.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon sergeant ensures that the required basic load, supplies, and platoon operational equipment are on hand.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted ammunition and resupply requests early.</li> <li>b. Supervised ammunition stockage, when used.</li> <li>c. Coordinated and supervised resupply and maintenance support.</li> <li>d. Requested fortification materials.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The leaders submit support requests.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Based requests on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon requested enough replacement personnel, water, rations, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until the next resupply.</li> <li>c. Submitted requests soon enough to ensure that current or future operations are not impaired.</li> <li>d. Made requests through the company executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The platoon conducts resupply.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed resupply as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>b. Distributed supplies throughout the unit, based on current and anticipated operations and needs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the platoon used supplies that had been stocked at firing positions first.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the platoon conducted resupply in a consolidated position instead of a dispersed position, when possible.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Resupplied the unit without restricting its security, communication, movement, or delivery of direct fire.</p> <p>5. The platoon is resupplied by ground transportation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a covered and concealed unloading site, with suitable routes leading into and out of the site.</li> <li>b. Divided supplies and moved them to the distribution point.</li> </ol> <p>6. The platoon is resupplied by air.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a reconnaissance (done by the element leader) of the selected landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ) to confirm that it met the following factors of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC):               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Marked the LZ and DZ so they were easily identified by the pilot.</li> <li>(2) Secured the LZ or DZ from enemy direct fire.</li> <li>(3) Secured the LZ or DZ (done by a platoon-size element).</li> <li>(4) Located the LZ or DZ near the unit's location, objective, or route.</li> <li>(5) Ensured that the surface was firm enough to support the weight of the resupply helicopter.</li> <li>(6) Ensured that the area was free of tree stumps or other objects that could puncture the bottom of the aircraft or damage sling-loaded cargo. Obstacles that could not be eliminated were clearly marked to avoid damage to helicopters. The company used red panels or other easily seen objects over the obstruction during daylight; used red lights at night..</li> <li>(7) Ensured that the area was free of loose debris that could damage helicopter engines.</li> <li>(8) Ensured that the ground slope was less than 8 degrees.</li> <li>(9) Ensured that the approach and departure ends of the LZ were free of tall trees, telephone lines, power lines, or similar obstacles that could interfere with aircraft landing or liftoffs. Used 10:1 ratio in determining approach/departure zones.</li> <li>(10) Ensured that the area was large enough for landing each utility-type helicopter (UH) (area needs to be roughly 35 meters in diameter in daylight or 50 meters in diameter at night).</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Organized the platoon to receive aerial resupply. This was done by the element leader.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated a security element.</li> <li>(2) Designated a recovery and distribution element.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Secured the landing zone This was done by the security element.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Established mutually-supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, and fields of fire, and covered the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions, considering terrain and small-arms rifle range.</li> <li>(4) Employed hasty obstacles, as required (for example, mines and roadblocks).</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Searched the area to ensure that was free of the enemy. This was done by the element leaders.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established mutually-supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, and fields of fire, and covered the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions, considering terrain and small-arms rifle range.</p> <p>(3) Employed hasty obstacles, as required (for example, mines and road blocks). The platoon leader--</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">( a ) Identified the operational area to the squad leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">( b ) Identified the load impact or aircraft landing point.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">( c ) Established a distribution point for supplies.</p> <p>e. Secured the LZ or DZ; the recovery and distribution element prepares the LZ or DZ. (This was done by the security element.)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Removed obstacles, if possible, and marked the obstacles that could not be remove.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Removed debris that would interfere with resupply aircraft.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Marked the load impact or aircraft landing point in a manner identified by the platoon leader (for example, smoke, lights, VS-17 panels, or field-expedient markers).</p> <p>f. The recovery and distribution squad moves quickly to the aircraft or air-dropped load.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Divided the air-dropped load, if required, and moved it to the distribution point.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Unloaded the aircraft, divided the load, if required, and moved it to the distribution point.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Concealed the LZ or DZ by removing any indication of its use, such as aircraft tracks, and recovered markers, equipment, and any other items that would identify its use for resupply.</p> <p>7. The platoon sergeant at the distribution point controls the break down of supplies according to the allocation plan.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Distributed supplies tactically to individuals (did not group together).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Maintained security through the operation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Continued the mission with the platoon.</p> <p>8. The platoon leader reports the completion of the resupply operation and any discrepancies to higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PLAN/DIRECT AERIAL LOGISTICS OPERATIONS (05-3-1054)  
 (FM 90-4) (FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has been conducting combat operations in support of a maneuver infantry battalion. The unit needs additional supplies and material to sustain combat operations and provide continuous support to the maneuver elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company staff determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations and is prepared to receive aerial resupply at the time and location specified. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company staff (commander, executive officer (XO), first sergeant, supply sergeant) determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed current and future missions with input from key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and leaders and determined anticipated ammunition, supply, and material requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the type and quantity of supplies to be requested.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared requirements with existing inventories.</li> <li>(2) Considered the resupply timetable.</li> <li>(3) Reviewed logistic status (LOGSTAT) reports and supply requests.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The commander selects the drop zone (DZ)/landing zone (LZ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the location was near the unit command post (CP) and was defensible.</li> <li>b. Ensured that landing aircraft would not pose additional risk to the helicopter or crew.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location was secure from enemy direct and indirect fire.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the supplies could be transported by personnel and/or equipment away from the site quickly.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the DZ/LZ was large enough to accommodate incoming aircraft and supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) 35 meters in diameter during the daytime and 50 meters in diameter during the night time for observation helicopters (OHs) and utility helicopters (UHs).</li> <li>(2) 100 meters long and 35 meters wide during the daytime and 150 meters long and 100 meters wide during the night for cargo helicopter (CH).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. The commander designates a reconnaissance element to conduct a reconnaissance of the selected LZ, if the resupply aircraft must land or the loads are externally rigged, and ensures that it meets the following criteria (based on factors of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the DZ/LZ could accommodate resupply with minimal effort.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the DZ/LZ met the following criteria:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that the area was large enough to allow the aircraft to maneuver (LZ only).</li> <li>(2) Ensured that it could be easily identified from the air.</li> <li>(3) Secured from enemy direct and indirect fire.</li> <li>(4) Secured by a company-size element.</li> <li>(5) Located to the unit's location, objective, or route.</li> <li>(6) Ensured that the surface was firm enough to support the weight of the resupply aircraft (LZ only).</li> <li>(7) Freed of tree stumps or other objects that could puncture the bottom of the aircraft or damage sling-loaded cargo. Marked items that could not be removed with panel markers, red lights, or other field expedient markers.</li> <li>(8) Ensured that the LZ was free of loose debris that could damage aircraft engines.</li> <li>(9) Ensured that the ground slope was less than 8 degrees (LZ only).</li> <li>(10) Ensured that the approach and departure ends of the LZ were free of tall trees, telephone lines, power lines, or similar obstacles that could interfere with aircraft landings or liftoffs. An obstacle ratio of 10 to 1 was used; that is, a landing point required 100 feet of horizontal clearance from a 10-foot-tall tree if the aircraft must approach or depart directly over the tree.</li> <li>c. Determined the amount of engineer assets required to prepare the LZ/DZ.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army (S3) for indirect fire support at the LZ/DZ if needed.</li> </ul> <p>4. The XO requests aerial resupply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the request with the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Delivery time.</li> <li>(2) Location of the DZ/LZ.</li> <li>(3) Desired method (airdropped or air landed).</li> <li>(4) Type and quantity of supplies.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Submitted the request to the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company commander organizes the company to receive aerial supply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated elements to secure the LZ or DZ.</li> <li>b. Designated a recovery and distribution element.</li> </ul> <p>6. The company security element secures the LZ or DZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy.</li> <li>b. Established mutually supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover for the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions.</li> <li>d. Employed hasty obstacles, as required (for example, claymore mines and roadblocks).</li> </ul> <p>7. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the operational area to the platoon leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element.</li> <li>b. Identified the load impact or helicopter landing point.</li> <li>c. Identified a distribution point for the supplies.</li> </ul> <p>8. The company prepares the LZ or DZ, after the area has been secured.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Removed all obstacles, if possible, and marked those which could not be easily seen during the day. The company used red panels or other easily seen objects over the obstruction during daylight; used red lights at night.</p> <p>b. Removed loose debris at the LZ which could have damaged rotor blades or aircraft engines.</p> <p>c. Marked the load impact area or helicopter landing point in a manner identified by the commander (for example, smoke, lights, VS-17 panels, field expedient markers).</p> <p>9. The company recovery and distribution team receives the supplies immediately on delivery.</p> <p>a. Moved quickly to the aircraft or airdropped load.</p> <p>b. Unloaded the aircraft, divided the load (if required), and moved it to the distribution point.</p> <p>c. Concealed the LZ or DZ by removing any items that could have identified its use for resupply, such as recovering markers, covering aircraft tracks, and removing rigging material and equipment.</p> <p>*10. The company commander controls the breakdown of the supplies at the distribution point according to the allocation plan.</p> <p>a. Ensured that supplies were distributed tactically.</p> <p>b. Ensured that security was maintained throughout the operation.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the unit continued its mission.</p> <p>*11. The commander reports receipt of the supplies to higher headquarters on completion of the delivery operation and disposes of the salvaged containers, parachutes, cargo nets, and pallets according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PERFORM BATTLE-DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (05-5-1041)  
 (FM 9-43-1) (TM 9-2350-276-BD)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The equipment is in a tactical environment where standard maintenance procedures are impractical. The commander authorizes the use of battle-damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The team or crew restores the equipment to minimum functional combat capability within the limitations imposed by time, damage, and available parts, tools, and materials. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The team performs an initial damage assessment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the extent of damage and the effect on vehicle operations.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Examined the system's failure.</li> <li>(2) Inspected the major systems visibly damaged, impaired, or inoperative.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Rechecked the system by different team members, if time and conditions permitted.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The team leader radios the platoon leader with an initial out-of-action report.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported damage assessment. The team leader--                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the vehicle's damage as out-of-action or impaired.</li> <li>(2) Specified the vehicle's location.</li> <li>(3) Reported the firepower status, if applicable.</li> <li>(4) Reported the mobility status.</li> <li>(5) Reported the manning status.</li> <li>(6) Identified the current and anticipated enemy action.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Used the nearest friendly radio to report, if the team's radio was inoperable or if the vehicle was not equipped with communications equipment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The team moves the vehicle.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the impaired vehicle to a concealed position.</li> <li>b. Used another vehicle to push or pull immobile vehicles to a concealed position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The team conducts a safety check.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stationed one team member with a fire extinguisher outside the vehicle before the safety check.</li> <li>b. Checked for combustible fluid leaks.</li> <li>c. Checked the wiring for arcing to avoid igniting combustibles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The team conducts functional or operational tests.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the systems to ensure that they were functional.</li> <li>b. Reported damaged and inoperative systems.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The team leader reports damage assessment to the platoon leader.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identified known causes of the vehicle's immobility. b. Specified what functions the team could restore and the estimated repair time. c. Reported the new location of the vehicle, if it had been moved.  7. The platoon leader coordinates for repair. a. Radioed the rear-area maintenance team (MT) to report the needed repairs and the location of the damaged vehicle. b. Advised the MT of the needed repair parts or special tools.  8. The vehicle team conducts battle-damage repairs. a. Performed field-expedient repairs to restore vehicle mobility. b. Performed the repairs based on the available skills, materials, and tools.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-2230.10-1001	Supervise the Maintenance of Engineer Equipment

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (5-OPFOR-0003)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT MOVEMENT (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS (08-2-0002.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10-1) (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist which require field-sanitation measures. The company is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. A unit field-sanitation team is assisting the commander in countering the health threat. The unit standing operating procedure (SOP) is available, as well as all required sanitation equipment. Field-sanitation activities are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Field-sanitation measures are accomplished in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or the operation order (OPORD) and field manual (FM) 21-10. The field-sanitation team performs field-sanitation activities IAW the TSOP, the commander's guidance, and FM 21-10-1.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander directs field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected at least two soldiers for the field-sanitation team.</li> <li>b. Supervised field-sanitation activities.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field-sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance for health-related problems from the supporting medical unit IAW the TSOP or OPORD.</li> <li>e. Enforced safety procedures were followed IAW with the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The field-sanitation team supervises unit field-sanitation activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained field-sanitation basic load.</li> <li>b. Supervised distribution of field-sanitation basic load items IAW FM 21-10-1.</li> <li>c. Tested the unit water supply for potability IAW FM 21-10.</li> <li>d. Monitored protective measures directed against arthropods and rodents to determine the control level IAW applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Monitored unit personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures.</li> <li>f. Inspected latrines and urinals IAW FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>g. Inspected liquid- and solid-waste disposal facilities to ensure compliance with FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>h. Inspected hand-washing devices IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>i. Inspected transport, storage, preparation, and serving of food for compliance with FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>j. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to company commander.</li> <li>k. Enforced safety procedures were followed IAW the TSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company elements employ field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Purified unpotable water for personal use IAW FM 21-10.</li> <li>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</li> <li>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation. h. Reported field-sanitation deficiencies to field-sanitation team.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-II-MQS	03-8310.00-3021	Protect Yourself Against Biting Insects
	03-8310.00-3023	Practice Personal Hygiene to Maintain Fitness
	04-8310.00-3017	Protect Yourself Against Cold
	04-8310.00-3019	Protect Yourself Against Heat
STP 21-I-MQS	03-8310.00-3021	Protect Yourself Against Biting Insects
	03-8310.00-3023	Practice Personal Hygiene to Maintain Fitness
	04-8310.00-3017	Protect Yourself Against Cold
	04-8310.00-3019	Protect Yourself Against Heat

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** TREAT CASUALTIES (08-2-0003.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-11) (FM 3-5) (FM 8-10-6)  
 (FM 8-285) (STP 21-1-SMCT)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has casualties. The platoon has no organic medical personnel. Threat-force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and some may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. Platoon members are treating the wounded. Some nonmedical members have been assigned the additional duty of combat lifesaver (CL). This task will be performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon members provide treatment for casualties according to field manual (FM) 21-11, FM 8-285, and CL certification standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise treatment of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitored treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure all casualties were treated.</li> <li>c. Directed employment of CLs to treat casualties.</li> <li>d. Coordinated replenishment of Class VIII supplies with the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</li> <li>e. Directed distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TSOP.</li> <li>f. Enforced quality control (QC) procedures for Class VIII items issued to company elements.</li> </ul> 2. Company elements survey casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for responsiveness.</li> <li>b. Checked for breathing.</li> <li>c. Checked for bleeding.</li> <li>d. Checked for shock.</li> <li>e. Checked for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures.</li> <li>f. Checked for burns.</li> <li>g. Checked for head injury.</li> </ul> 3. Company elements administer lifesaving treatment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared all objects from the throat of the casualty.</li> <li>b. Used jaw thrust method to open airway, if cervical spine injury was suspected.</li> <li>c. Performed mouth-to-mouth resuscitation to restore the casualty's breathing according to cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) procedures.</li> </ul> 4. Company elements control hemorrhage. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Applied manual, direct pressure to the wound.</li> <li>b. Elevated extremities.</li> <li>c. Applied a pressure dressing to the wound.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Applied digital pressure. e. Applied a tourniquet as a last resort.</p> <p>5. Company elements dress wounds. a. Applied a dressing to an open chest wound. b. Applied a dressing to an open abdominal wound. c. Applied a dressing to an open head wound.</p> <p>6. Company elements splint suspected fractures. a. Employed available materials to a splint injury. b. Splinted the fracture in the position found. c. Restricted movement of extremities. d. Checked circulation for impairment.</p> <p>7. Company elements treat burn casualties. a. Extinguished thermal burn agent(s). b. Removed chemical burn agent(s). c. Eliminated electrical burn source. d. Uncovered the burn unless it was stuck to clothing or a chemical environment existed. e. Applied a field dressing.</p> <p>8. Company elements treat environmental injuries. a. Administered first aid for heat injuries. b. Administered first aid for frostbite.</p> <p>9. Company elements treat chemical casualties. a. Took immediate protective steps according to FM 8-285 to protect self and warn others. b. Protected the casualty from further contamination. c. Administered a nerve agent antidote according to FM 21-11. d. Decontaminated the casualty according to FM 8-286, if necessary.</p> <p>10. Company elements prevent shock. a. Positioned the casualty in the correct antishock position according to FM 21-11. b. Loosened clothing and equipment. c. Prevented the casualty from chilling or overheating. d. Calmed the casualty by reassuring him.</p> <p>11. Company CLs perform advanced treatment. a. Evaluated the casualty for the condition and type of treatment needed. b. Measured the casualty's vital signs. c. Recorded the casualty's vital signs.</p> <p>NOTE: Vital signs were monitored throughout treatment for abnormalities and conditions that required immediate action.</p> <p>d. Inserted an oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty. e. Applied a splint to a fractured limb. f. Administered first aid to chemical-agent casualties. g. Initiated an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock. h. Identified cold injuries. i. Treated cold injuries. j. Managed battle-fatigue casualties.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1004	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1003	CLEAR AN OBJECT FROM THE THROAT OF A CONSCIOUS CASUALTY
	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1008	GIVE FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES
	081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1026	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN CHEST WOUND
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	
081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION	
STP 21-II-MQS	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3016	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
	04-8310.00-3018	Give First Aid for Frostbite
	04-8310.00-3020	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
	04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
	04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
STP 21-I-MQS	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3016	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
	04-8310.00-3018	Give First Aid for Frostbite
	04-8310.00-3020	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
	04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
	04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** TRANSPORT CASUALTIES (UNITS W/O MEDICAL PERS) (08-2-0316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-11) (FM 100-5) (FM 12-6)  
 (FM 57-38) (FM 8-10-6) (FM 8-285)  
 (FM 8-55) (STP 21-1-SMCT) (STP 21-II-MQS)  
 (STP 21-I-MQS)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers have been wounded and some may have chemical contamination. Company defenses have been reorganized. Threat-force contact has been broken. Casualties are evacuated from fighting positions to designated company medical collection points. All methods of evacuation will be employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require evacuation. This task will be performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are evacuated as soon as the tactical situation permits, without causing further injuries, in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or operations order (OPORD) and field manual (FM) 8-10-6.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Company leaders supervise evacuation of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>b. Identified evacuation requirements.</li> <li>c. Managed preparation of casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>d. Coordinated evacuation of casualties from the company area with the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) IAW the TSOP and FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>e. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>f. Disseminated evacuation information to company personnel.</li> <li>g. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the S1 IAW the TSOP and FM 12-6.</li> </ul> 2. Company elements prepare casualties for evacuation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Treated casualties.</li> <li>b. Collected classified documents (signal operation instructions (SOI), maps, map overlays, and key lists).</li> <li>c. Secured custody of organizational equipment IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to company headquarters IAW the TSOP.</li> </ul> 3. Company elements use manual carries to evacuate casualties to collection points. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Transported casualties without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> 4. Company elements use litter carries to evacuate casualties to casualty collection points. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified litter team(s).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Constructed improvised litters from available material as required. c. Secured casualties on litters. d. Transported casualties without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.  5. Company elements use available vehicles to transport casualties to a medical treatment facility. a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties. Loaded the most seriously injured last IAW FM 8-10-6. b. Secured casualties in the vehicle. c. Transported casualties without causing further injury.  * 6. The commander requests air evacuation. a. Transmitted an air-evacuation request IAW the OPORD or operation plan (OPLAN), the TSOP, and FM 8-10-6. b. Selected a landing site which provided sufficient space for helicopter hovering, landing, and takeoff IAW FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38. c. Ensured dangerous objects (those likely to be blown about) were removed prior to the arrival of the helicopter. d. Supervised the security of the landing site IAW the TSOP.  7. Company elements assist in loading the ambulance. a. Employed proper carrying and loading techniques IAW FM 8-10-6. b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew without causing unnecessary discomfort to the casualties. c. Followed safety procedures IAW the TSOP and FM 8-10-6.  8. Company elements evacuate chemically contaminated casualties. a. Marked contaminated casualties IAW the TSOP. b. Notified the supporting medical element that contaminated casualties were en route to their location. c. Took contaminated casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. d. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.  9. Company personnel evacuate EPW casualties. a. Maintained security of EPW casualties IAW the TSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons or ordnance prior to evacuation. c. Evacuated EPW casualties IAW the Geneva Convention and the TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1003	CLEAR AN OBJECT FROM THE THROAT OF A CONSCIOUS CASUALTY
	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1026	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN CHEST WOUND
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
	081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
	081-831-1040	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A ONE-MAN CARRY
	081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER
	081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION
STP 21-II-MQS	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
	04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
	04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
STP 21-I-MQS	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
	04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
	04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PERFORM UNIT GRAVES REGISTRATION (GRREG) OPERATIONS (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (AR 638-30) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; the task is performed by nonmortuary affairs personnel. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials. NOTE: Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in MOPP 4

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander designates a search and recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected team leader(s).</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search and recovery team leader(s) prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or an aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search and recovery team leader(s) supervises the search and recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search and recovery team(s) on the operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC-agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search and recovery team(s) operations for compliance with the TSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The search and recovery team(s) conducts the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps.</li> <li>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>c. Marked the terrain location(s) of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> <li>e. Recorded the eight-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The search and recovery team(s) recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established tentative identification.</li> <li>b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large "C" to the contaminated and/or contagious remains.</li> <li>c. Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>e. Prepared a recovery-site sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The search and recovery team(s) evacuates remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation feet first, in aircraft head first.</li> <li>c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The search and recovery team leader(s) supervises emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ul> <p>8. The search and recovery team(s) performs emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>b. Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>c. Marked all the grave sites.</li> <li>d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave site(s).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** INSTALL A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT) (11-5-0049.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon installs wire, a switchboard, and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel install a telephone switchboard (SB).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone switchboard on a flat surface such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or a canvas to protect the switchboard from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the switchboard on its side so the nameplate was up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the switchboard preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the switchboard according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable prior to installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone switchboard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the switchboard was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone switchboard according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Performs PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** OPERATE A TELEPHONE SWITCH (MANUAL/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone switchboard (SB).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone switchboard on a flat surface such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or a canvas to protect the switchboard from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the switchboard on its side so the nameplate was up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the switchboard preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the switchboard according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable prior to installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone switchboard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the switchboard was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone switchboard according to TM 11-5805-262-12.  4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Performs PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PROVIDE A FIELD CABLE/WIRE SYSTEM (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-3895-203-15)  
 (TM 11-5805-262-12) (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable/wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone-traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone-system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone switchboard on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the switchboard from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the switchboard on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed switchboard preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the switchboard according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable/wire before installing.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> <li>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</li> <li>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>f. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> <li>i. Finished the line-route map indicating the routes of wire lines, switchboards, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</li> </ul> <p>4. The section operates the telephone switchboard.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the switchboard to ensure that it was operational.</li> <li>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</li> <li>c. Processed calls.</li> <li>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</li> <li>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the switchboard according to the appropriate TM.</li> </ul> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable/wire lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field cable/wire lines.</li> <li>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21B 9	01-1910.10-1001	Direct the Construction of Survivability Positions
	01-1950.10-1001	Supervise the Construction of Survivability Positions
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-II-MQS	01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation
	01-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT
	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-I-MQS	O3-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material
	01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation
	O1-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT
	O3-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	O3-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT DEFENSIVE PREPARATIONS (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 19-40) (STP 19-95B1-SM)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the 5 Ss and T (search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the weapons and the documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military-intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPWs leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> <li>c. Exploited the intelligence information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** REPORT ENGINEER INFORMATION (05-1-0026)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170)

(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion is conducting continuous operations. The battalion's tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information which will have an impact on their operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion TOC (Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer [US Army] [S3]) receives engineer information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged information in a message log on the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</li> <li>b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element.</li> <li>c. Maintained a file copy of all hard-copy reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>b. Disseminated the intelligence and weather information to the S2.</li> <li>c. Disseminated the operations and maneuver information to the S3.</li> <li>d. Disseminated the logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>e. Disseminated the command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the command group commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO).</li> <li>f. Disseminated the information according to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP) to action elements utilizing the reporting procedures on the MCS.</li> <li>g. Disseminated the information copies to other elements, as required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The action element(s) analyzes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical (nonessential) information.</li> <li>b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation.</li> <li>c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The action element(s) acts on the information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements.</li> <li>b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS.</li> <li>c. Determined the course of action (COA).</li> <li>d. Selected the COA.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed. f. Implemented the COA. g. Prepared required reports according to the battalion's SOP. h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all appropriate reports according to the battalion's SOP.  5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information. a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff; transmitted/submitted the reports according to the battalion's SOP utilizing the MCS. b. Prepared and transmitted/submitted reports to higher HQ, supported maneuver command, and adjacent elements according to higher HQ's SOP utilizing the MCS. c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs, on the MCS, as required. d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ utilizing the MCS. e. Logged the submission/transmission of the report/information. f. Updated the command group utilizing the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT) as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21B 9	01-2250.20-1001	Prepare Engineer Estimates
	01-2250.20-1003	Direct the Employment of Engineers
	01-2250.20-1005	Evaluate Engineer Intelligence for Dissemination
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-3153	Prepare OBSTINTEL report
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4010 052-218-4013	CONDUCT ENGINEER BATTLE TRACKING Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-II-MQS	S1-9060.00-3000	Conduct Company and Battalion Operations According to the Laws of War
STP 21-I-MQS	S1-9060.00-3000	Conduct Company and Battalion Operations According to the Laws of War



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** DISRUPT A NET CONTROL STATION (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a net control station (NCS). The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN (05-1-0029)  
(FM 5-104)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is located in the division or corps rear area or communications zone (COMMZ). The higher headquarters assigns ADC tasks to the battalion. Higher headquarters establishes the mission requirements and priorities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The area-damage-control plan minimizes the effects of an enemy attack. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), assisted by the communications-electronics (CE) officer, establishes communications with the supported unit's rear operations command (either a rear-area operations center (RAOC), base cluster, or base).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used normal signal channels (frequency modulated (FM), land line, or multichannel).</li> <li>b. Established a communication link to afford the capability for immediate communications at any time.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the engineer unit plans with the ADC requirements and periodically monitored the supported command element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The battalion commander and staff use information developed from the engineer estimate with ADC considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified and prioritized potential ADC tasks.</li> <li>b. Determined the specialized engineer support required beyond the battalion's capability.</li> <li>c. Determined preventive actions to take prior to an incident.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Stockpiled materials.</li> <li>(2) Located alternate routes.</li> <li>(3) Identified replacement facilities.</li> <li>(4) Identified other requirements as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Identified host-nation assets and other units required and/or available.</li> <li>e. Designated an engineer company to perform each ADC task, starting with the highest priority.</li> <li>f. Specified quality standards for the repair.</li> </ul> <p>3. Companies perform preventive tasks prior to an event occurring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed an on-site reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Developed repair and contingency plans.</li> <li>c. Established communications links with the supported element.</li> <li>d. Requested assets from higher echelons (if required) and coordinate for linkup.</li> </ul> <p>4. The battalion staff, upon request, reviews unit, base, and base cluster ADC plans.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO) (05-2-0025)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information from subordinate elements and the battalion. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operations (AO). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element receives obstacle information required by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A status report, called an obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gives the serial number, type, location (eight-digit and coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</li> <li>b. A SCATMINE record and report or SCATMINE warning report. See Field Manual (FM) 20-32.</li> <li>c. A map sheet(s).</li> <li>d. The enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Additional assets or equipment required. Notified the supply section and the platoons of the type, quantity, and personnel.</li> <li>f. Execution of the obstacle (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> <li>g. Obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command.</p> <p>3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on scatterable mines. See FM 20-32.</p> <p>4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; relocation of material; emplacement and execution of scatterable mines; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</p> <p>5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on the command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, a recovery vehicle, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, the mission location, a map sheet(s), and platoons needing assistance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records the obstacle information from the platoons and the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the situational awareness (SA) and obstacle overlay with the team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed-off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations.</li> <li>b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed-off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC.</li> <li>c. Maintained files of sent reports.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion's S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-2250.20-1006	Provide Input to Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-196-3153	Prepare OBSTINTEL report
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3004	Prepare a digital bridge report
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-3006	Prepare a land route report
	052-218-4010	CONDUCT ENGINEER BATTLE TRACKING
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT REPORT PROCEDURES (05-2-1218)

(FM 24-1)	(FM 24-18)	(FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 3-100)	(FM 3-11)	(FM 34-45)
(FM 7-7)	(STANAG 2003)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element is conducting combat operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. The report should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, in the appropriate field manual (FM), or in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit's SOP or the situation. The leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ. The leaders--</p> <p>NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, the damage, and the angle of the fall or the descent, as the time and the conditions permit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).</li> </ul> <p>3. The radio telephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4.</p> <p>c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro optics - 5.</p> <p>d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency.</p> <p>e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications).</p> <p>f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates.</p> <p>* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The leaders submit information on the--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Line of departure (LD) crossing</li> <li>b. Checkpoint arrival times.</li> <li>c. Rally point (RP) arrival time.</li> <li>d. Logistics report.</li> <li>e. Intelligence report.</li> </ol> <p>5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2003. The report includes--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the patrol.</li> <li>b. The date.</li> <li>c. The unit receiving the report.</li> <li>d. The name of the person submitting the report.</li> <li>e. The size and composition of the patrol.</li> <li>f. The mission.</li> <li>g. The departure and return times.</li> <li>h. The routes out and back.</li> <li>i. A terrain description, to include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly-wooded, high brush, or rocky.</li> <li>(2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws.</li> <li>(3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges.</li> <li>(4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>j. Data on the enemy, to include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Strength.</li> <li>(2) Disposition</li> <li>(3) Condition of the defense.</li> <li>(4) Equipment and weapons.</li> <li>(5) Morale of the personnel.</li> <li>(6) Exact location.</li> <li>(7) Shift in disposition.</li> <li>(8) Time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</li> </ol> </li> <li>k. Any map corrections.</li> <li>l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) warfare.</li> <li>m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, to include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</li> <li>(2) Identification of enemy personnel.</li> <li>(3) Enemy casualties.</li> <li>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded. o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics. p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader. q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the interrogator's signature.  * 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report. The leaders-- a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).  * 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report. The leaders-- a. Submitted the NBC 4 report to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
MOS O 21I 9	01-2250.20-1006	Provide Input to Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-4010	CONDUCT ENGINEER BATTLE TRACKING
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	071-326-5505	PREPARE AND ISSUE AN ORAL SQUAD OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The company commander decides on a course of action. The company commander states which significant factors are decisive in selecting a course of action.</p> <p>* 8. The company commander completes the plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available and civilian considerations (METT-TC); intelligence from the reconnaissance; and other sources. The company commander prepares an OPORD.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander issues his orders, with the appropriate annexes to his subordinate leaders. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided ample planning and preparation time to his subordinate leaders, using only one-third of the available time.</li> <li>b. Clarified any questions.</li> </ol> <p>*10. The company prepares for the mission. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested combat-support (CS) assets to facilitate his mission.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the necessary plans and actions with higher headquarters and adjacent and supporting units.</li> <li>c. Received the attachment personnel. The attachments were checked for mission readiness, assigned to a point of contact within the company and, as time permitted, briefed on-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The company's mission and the company commander's intent.</li> <li>(2) Their specific tasks.</li> <li>(3) Pertinent company standing operating procedures (SOPs), warning alarms, and signals.</li> <li>(4) The overall plan.</li> <li>(5) Recent enemy activity.</li> <li>(6) Recent company activity.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The coordination of plans and actions and the receipt of the attachment personnel may also be performed by other representatives (the executive officer [XO]; the first sergeant [ISG]; the nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC] leader; the noncommissioned officer [NCO]; the communications chief; the platoon leader; or the section leader).</p> <p>11. The subordinate elements prepare for the mission.</p> <p>*12. The subordinate leaders conduct brief backs of their plans to the company commander.</p> <p>13. The company rehearses key actions as the situation permits.</p> <p>14. The company prepares all field expedient equipment needed for their tasks.</p> <p>*15. Key leaders prepare for operations. The key leaders--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised personnel.</li> <li>b. Inspected personnel.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary brief backs with personnel.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed operations.</li> <li>e. Continued coordination at various levels.</li> </ol> <p>*16. The company plans the sustainment of combat operations. The company commander--</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Analyzed the mission, along with the XO and the 1SG, with input from other key NCOs and leaders, (the communication chief, the NBC leader, the platoon leaders, the platoon sergeants, the mortar-section leader, and the antiarmor-section leader) and determined the ammunition, supply, and service requirements.</p> <p>b. Issued guidance on soldiers' loads. The loads were redistributed according to the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Combat load. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a) The fighting load.</li> <li>( b) The approach-march load.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Sustainment load.</li> </ul> <p>c. Monitored the transportation requirements. The XO and the ISG determined the transportation needs to support the operation and prepared the necessary requests. The unit--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Requested transportation when the time and distance factors necessitated.</li> <li>(2) Employed transportation to reduce soldier fatigue (when the tactical situation permitted).</li> <li>(3) Moved excess equipment and personal items by transportation to comply with the soldiers' load guidance.</li> </ul> <p>d. Monitored the supply requirements. The XO or the ISG coordinated with the company supply sergeant and the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) and selected the supply techniques to support the tactical plan. The selected techniques provided adequate supplies when and where they were needed and did not compromise the company's security.</p> <p>e. Determined the special equipment and supply requirements. The XO or the ISG requested, received, and distributed the equipment and supplies.</p> <p>f. Established and executed a rest plan for all company members (particularly key personnel and leaders) based on the unit's SOP, the mission analysis, and the current orders. The rest plan included the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coverage of leadership positions, key unit functions, and the continuous manning of all key positions.</li> <li>(2) Procedures for ensuring that the performance and the judgment of the leaders and key personnel were not degraded by fatigue.</li> </ul> <p>17. The company performs continuous reconnaissance during the operation. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the enemy's strength, location, activity, and equipment (upon contact).</li> <li>b. Identified the important aspects of the terrain based on the OCOKA.</li> </ul> <p>18. The company monitors the actions of higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units. The platoon leader is informed of the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enemy contact size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Friendly locations, actions, and movement.</li> <li>c. Calls for fire.</li> <li>d. Orders from higher headquarters to other units.</li> </ul> <p>*19. The company commander issues orders or modifies his original plan. The order or change must be explained in terms of the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Current company mission.</li> <li>b. Higher commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Enemy situation.</li> <li>d. Additional engineer resources and the revision to the plans.</li> <li>e. Additional engineer resources required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Friendly situation. g. Terrain. h. Troops available.</p> <p>*20. The company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGO) to the company and the supporting units. The FRAGO--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contained the situation, mission, element tasks, and the changes in the task organization (if needed).</li> <li>b. Reached and was acknowledged by all subordinate leaders.</li> <li>c. Reflected a changed situation or order from higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>21. The company reacts to orders from higher headquarters. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acknowledged receipt of the orders in accordance with unit's SOP.</li> <li>b. Executed changes in the task organization, as required or directed.</li> <li>c. Determined short-term changes or the new requirements for engineer support to the maneuver plan.</li> <li>d. Reported the execution of orders to higher headquarters and the adjacent units according the unit's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>22. The company coordinates actions with friendly units during the operation. The company commander informs higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units of the company's location, actions, and changes in mission.</p> <p>*23. The company headquarters reports combat-critical information, according to the unit's SOP, to higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units. The report includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A SALUTE report.</li> <li>b. Terrain information.</li> <li>c. Any variations from the plan.</li> <li>d. Changes to the obstacle database plan maintained at the company level.</li> <li>e. Changes in the friendly situation.</li> <li>f. The initiation of actions by the company.</li> <li>g. The CS or combat-service-support (CSS) requests required to execute the tasks.</li> <li>h. The information from other friendly units (that the higher headquarters cannot monitor).</li> </ul> <p>*24. The company headquarters disseminates information to all subordinate units. The information is issued--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. On enemy contact.</li> <li>b. When an adjacent unit's actions, location, or movement affects the company.</li> <li>c. When changes in the company situation occur.</li> <li>d. When the battalion issues an order or the situation changes.</li> <li>e. When the terrain information affects the company.</li> <li>f. When changes in CS or CSS affect the company.</li> </ul> <p>25. The company reassigns personnel after sustaining casualties.</p> <p>*26. The XO or 1SG reassigns individual personnel based on the company commander's guidance, to ensure that leadership and other key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.</p> <p>*27. The company commander reorganizes the squads and platoons when the individual reassignments are inadequate to ensure that each squad or platoon has leadership and enough soldiers to accomplish their missions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-191-1361	CAMOUFLAGE YOURSELF AND YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT
	052-191-1362	CAMOUFLAGE EQUIPMENT
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	071-326-3049	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES FOR AN OPERATION

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0002)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay/disrupt/damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support site[s] or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated target(s). 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK: CONDUCT RAID (5-OPFOR-0004)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective area(s) within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (5-OPFOR-0005)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation

point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN OPERATION ORDER (OPORD) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is performing tactical operations. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD follows the commander's intent, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the commander's intent, the subordinate unit's instructions, and coordinating instructions.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Ensured that the service-support paragraph contained combat-service-support (CSS) and unit-support instructions. If the paragraph is too long, use an annex. Otherwise, use the following paragraph sample format:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Material and services.</li> <li>(2) Medical.</li> <li>(3) Personnel.</li> <li>(4) Civil military.</li> <li>(5) As necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and frequency modulated [FM]).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the 1/3-2/3 rule (allow subordinates 2/3 of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O 21I 9	01-2250.20-1002	Prepare Engineer Annexes
No STP and No MOS	01-2250.20-1003	Direct the Employment of Engineers
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	052-238-4508	PREPARE A DIVING MISSION OPERATIONS ORDER
STP 21-24-SMCT	O4-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders
	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (PLATOON] (05-3-0002)

(FM 5-100)  
(FM 5-102)

(FM 101-5)  
(FM 5-103)

(FM 3-34.2)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A platoon is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness or daylight, under all weather conditions. The unit is either working directly for an engineer unit from which it has received an operation order (OPORD) or is supporting a maneuver force which has received a mission from its higher headquarters. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer estimate gives the platoon leader feasible courses of action consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader performs a mission analysis. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the mission objectives, which included the--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Intent of the immediate commander and the commander two levels above.</li> <li>(2) Area of operations.</li> <li>(3) Tasks to be performed, specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance or in the OPORD and implied by the nature of the operation, and decided which were essential to the mission's success.</li> <li>(4) Constraints or acts requiring completion.</li> <li>(5) Restraints or prohibited acts.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Restated the unit's mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The platoon leader performs a situation analysis. The platoon leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the supported operations, the nature of the operations, the composition of the supported forces, any unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and the scope of the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the characteristics of the area of operations and the impact on the engineer options.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzed the weather for the precipitation and temperature impacts on the--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Trafficability for enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Water obstacle depth, flow rate, and bank conditions.</li> <li>(c) Ability to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> <li>(d) Fog or the limited visibility impact on the positioning of the obstacles.</li> <li>(e) Engineer vehicle's capability to maneuver in limited visibility and reduced trafficability and to keep pace with the maneuver-unit's fighting vehicles.</li> <li>(f) Employment of conventional and scatterable mines in extreme weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Analyzed the terrain for the--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Observation or the fields of fire. Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy) and the items, buildings, and vegetation to be cleared to improve the observation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Cover and concealment. Identified the concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river-crossing operations). Identified the possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance</p> <p>(c) Obstacles. Identified the existing natural and man-made obstacles and their impact on the maneuver, the avenues of approach, and the placement of the reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these items with respect to friendly and the enemy maneuvers and the type of unit.</p> <p>(d) Key or decisive terrain. Determined the potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control or to deny enemy control.</p> <p>(e) Avenues of approach. Identified the friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based upon the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach.</p> <p>(3) Analyzed other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), developed the enemy situation, and provided input about the enemy's engineer capabilities.</p> <p>(1) Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to the organic enemy engineers from the higher enemy echelons.</p> <p>(2) Determined the location of enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capabilities, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely-delivered mine capability.</p> <p>(3) Assessed the enemy's capabilities for breaching, gap crossings, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and remotely-delivered mine emplacement (from aircraft or artillery).</p> <p>(4) Evaluated the recent and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify the weaknesses and the strengths.</p> <p>(5) Predicted the possible and likely courses of action on the enemy and the impact of the enemy's engineer situation on their courses of action.</p> <p>d. Evaluates the platoon's current situation.</p> <p>(1) The tactical situation. Evaluated the present disposition of the major tactical elements, the possible courses of action, and the current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Personnel and logistics. Evaluated the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, the levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets.</p> <p>(3) The engineer situation. Evaluated the present disposition and capabilities of platoon elements and the estimated completion times of the current tasks. Evaluated the number of combat support units to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader develops at least two separate courses of action to accomplish the mission or develops an engineer plan as part of each course of action under development by the maneuver force. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. Identified the requirements, the tasks, and the necessary resources to accomplish them, by location or by the supported unit.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Computed the blade hours using known data. If the actual data was not available, used the planning factors outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-34, 5-102, or 5-103.</p> <p>(2) Computed the squad hours.</p> <p>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</p> <p>(4) Identified supply requirements by the class of supply and the specific items.</p> <p>b. Summarized resource requirements for each location or supported unit by the squad hours, equipment, and logistics.</p> <p>c. Determined the priorities for tasks based on the guidance from the higher commander.</p> <p>d. Allocated engineer forces to--</p> <p>(1) Meet the guidance of higher commander.</p> <p>(2) Accomplish all tasks.</p> <p>(3) Employ the assets efficiently, with no wasted squad or equipment time.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader analyzes each course of action. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each course of action against anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it.</p> <p>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing the resource requirements with the available assets.</p> <p>NOTE: The significant factors should include the critical maneuver-force events.</p> <p>c. Reduced the shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan (as necessary). The requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of the available resources.</p> <p>NOTE: If the engineer plan does not meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, beginning with Subtask 3.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader compares each proposed course of action and selects which one best accomplishes the mission. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>b. Used the significant factors identified in Subtask 4a.</p> <p>NOTE: The selection of the best course of action is a subjective judgment, it is not based solely upon numerical techniques.</p> <p>* 6. The platoon leader makes a decision. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. Stated his decision clearly to his subordinates.</p> <p>b. Determined the company's task organization and allocated the resources.</p> <p>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader makes a recommendation to the supported-unit's maneuver commander. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. Stated which course of action could be supported from the engineer perspective.</p> <p>b. Covered major deficiencies and included recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.</p> <p>c. Recommended the engineer task organization, the command and support relationships (as necessary), the tasks directed to subordinate elements, and the priorities for engineer support.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-2250.20-1001	Prepare Engineer Estimates
	052-194-4014	Conduct engineer parralel and colaberative planining
	052-195-4050	PREPARE ENGINEER ESTIMATES
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader proceadures
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4003	PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESMENT
	052-218-4012	Plan engineer above division (EAD) support to manuver units

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX (PLATOON [PLT]) (05-3-0003)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver force in a tactical operation. The platoon leader is the force engineer and must prepare an engineer annex as part of the supported unit's operation order (OPORD). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver-commander's operation. The annex is clear, and the maneuver force understands its concept.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader selects an annex format based on the amount and type of information needed, the time available to produce it, and the guidance from the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) of the maneuver unit.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. A written annex format uses the basic five-paragraph order format.</p> <p>2. An overlay annex format includes the following: (1) All existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, or gaps). (2) All known and templated enemy obstacles. (3) Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas.</p> <p>3. An obstacle-list annex format contains all obstacles.</p> <p>4. An engineer-execution matrix annex format includes the following: (1) All identified engineer tasks. (2) All identified logistic and coordination requirements. (3) Marginal notes to cover other needed information.</p> <p>* 2. The engineer platoon leader ensures that the annex contains the information from the estimate process. The annex--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contained all information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Did not contain items covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), although it can make reference to the SOP.</li> <li>c. Was directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit, not just the engineers.</li> <li>d. Was clear, complete, brief, timely, and avoided qualified directives.</li> <li>e. Did not contain irrelevant information.</li> <li>f. Was issued with the OPORD. All details were fully integrated with the other parts of the OPORD.</li> <li>g. Contained the tasks directed to units other than the engineers. The tasks were coordinated prior to the issuance of the annex. All details were coordinated with the appropriate battle-staff element.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The platoon leader, when using the written five-paragraph order format, ensures that the annex contains the following:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. SITUATION. (1) The enemy situation contains aspects significantly impacting on engineer operations, including the weather, the terrain, and the engineer capability. (2) The friendly forces situation identifies other engineer units in general support. It describes other elements which can assist with the engineer plan. (3) Attachments and detachments (only if needed for clarity).</p> <p>b. MISSION. Refers to Subtask 2 and the basic OPORD.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION. (1) A concept of operation contains: (a) A brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of the engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement is precise and specific. (b) Obstacles. As appropriate, the annex identifies the individual obstacles and obstacle zones, belts, or restricted areas; the types (reserved or preliminary); the authorized commander (for reserved obstacles), and the obstacle responsibilities of the subordinate unit. The annex should refer to an overlay or an obstacle table. (c) Scatterable mines. As appropriate, the annex explains the employment concept, the authority for a long or a short self-destruct time (by system), other requirements or limitations, and the allocation to subordinate elements. The annex identifies nonengineer units responsible for emplacing scatterable mines. (2) Engineer related subunit missions, as necessary. The annex identifies tasks for the subordinate maneuver units, engineers under direct control of the issuing headquarters, and other elements assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander. (3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. The annex identifies the measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT. The service-support information contains logistical information affecting the engineer plan, specifically Class IV, Class V, and transportation. It identifies the available host-nation assets and their locations and the priorities for command-regulated items.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. (1) Command. The command contains the location of engineer command posts (CPs) and special command arrangements. (2) Signal.</p> <p>NOTE: Nonengineer units with scatterable-mine emplacement capabilities (artillery, Army aviation, and Air Force) are identified here. All forces covered by the maneuver-unit's OPORD have the same mission. There is no separate engineer mission for the engineer annex. A general statement such as "priority to mobility, counter mobility, and survivability in order" is unsatisfactory.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-194-4014	Conduct engineer parralel and colaberative planing



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4002	Analyze Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-4004	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX
	052-218-4012	Plan engineer above division (EAD) support to maneuver units

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT SELF-EXTRACTION FROM REMOTELY-DELIVERED MINES (05-3-0113)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element is supporting a construction mission in a tactical environment. Remotely-delivered mines impact on or around the element. The personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-area protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>2. The command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert the units. The CP personnel--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified all of the elements. If the element was--                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>(3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> <li>(4) Not able to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared the mines from the positions through detonation and departed as soon as it was feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed the higher HQ and adjacent units of the situation. The CP personnel included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.</li> <li>c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The vehicle commanders check the immediate area. The element personnel remove the mines and the trip wires from the vehicles. The vehicle commanders--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>b. Removed the trip wires from the soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		
<p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the remainder of the unit was out of the minefield.</p> <p>* 4. The element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. The element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. The element personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual means to locate mines and mark vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The element personnel marked lanes according to the tactical situation and threat; however, the marked areas also allowed for personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</li> <li>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes, using a grapnel hook or other means, as directed by the company commander. The element personnel detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The vehicle commanders direct the personnel ground-guiding the vehicles out of the minefield. The vehicle commanders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Placed any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire onto the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed the vehicles to exit the minefield on their own.</li> </ul> <p>7. The company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. The company personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</li> <li>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove the vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</li> <li>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</li> <li>d. Placed sandbags near the mines to minimize the vehicle and equipment damage.</li> <li>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</li> <li>f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.</li> </ul> <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, the element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow for mission accomplishment. The element personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared the communication lanes between the positions.</li> <li>b. Marked the communication lanes between the positions.</li> <li>c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from detonation.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-192-1042	Perform self extraction from a minefield
	052-192-2180	Supervise self extraction from minefield
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-3005	Prepare an obstacle report using FBCB2
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-24-SMCT	052-193-1013	NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	052-193-2030	CLEAR MISFIRES
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	052-193-2030	CLEAR MISFIRES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0001)**

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly-held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: DEFEND MINEFIELD (5-OPFOR-0023)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES (05-3-1018.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-71-2)  
 (FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operations order (OPORD). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO or an OPORD from its higher headquarters. The element leader determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to the subordinate leaders. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation).</li> <li>b. Identified the task organization.</li> <li>c. Stated the time of the operation.</li> <li>d. Gave any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Stated the element time line.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the plan based on the METT-TC.</li> <li>b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.</li> <li>c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</li> <li>d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured equipment based on the mission. Subordinate leaders checked rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element continues assembly-area activities and security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</li> <li>b. Conducted personal hygiene.</li> <li>c. Resupplied the equipment and materials, to include small-arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and the refueling of the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</li> <li>e. Conducted weapon test firing (if possible).</li> <li>f. Ate and rested.</li> <li>g. Maintained security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element begins movement. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. The subordinate leader moves the element in the absence of the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance as a minimum. (When practical, the subordinate leaders participated in the reconnaissance.)</li> <li>b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.</li> <li>(2) Identified the critical areas to the mission.</li> <li>(3) Moved as far forward as the time and the situation permitted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>7. The element leader completes the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the available equipment, personnel, and material.</li> <li>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or an OPORD format, to the subordinate leaders and to the attached leaders. The order contains the following information:</p> <p>NOTE: The order may be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SITUATION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Friendly forces.</li> <li>(3) Attachments and detachments.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. MISSION.</li> <li>c. EXECUTION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Concept of the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Fires.</li> <li>(c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.</li> <li>(d) Intelligence.</li> <li>(e) Engineer support.</li> <li>(f) Air defense.</li> <li>(g) Information operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Subunit tasks.</li> <li>(3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum the element leader must address the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Time or condition when a plan or order becomes effective.</li> <li>(b) Commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>(c) Risk-reduction control measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The element leader determined the risk-reduction control measures by using the 5 steps of the risk-management process. For additional information, the element leader referred to Field Manual (FM) 101-5.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) Rules of engagement.</li> <li>(e) Environmental considerations.</li> <li>(f) Force protection.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. SERVICE SUPPORT. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Support concept.</li> <li>(2) Materials and services.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.                      (4) Personnel.                      (5) Civil Military.                      e. COMMAND and SIGNAL.                      (1) Command.                          (a) The location of the element leadership, support-element leadership, and the command posts for the operation.                          (b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element's standing operating procedure [SOP] or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).                      (2) Signal.                          (a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.                          (b) Radio communication restrictions.                          (c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.                          (d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.                          (e) Communication security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</p> <p>* 9. The subordinate leaders complete the PCCs. The element leaders conduct the PCIs.                      NOTE: Subordinate leaders can conduct the PCCs on receipt of a WO or a FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the element TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Checked/inventoried equipment and ensured that the items were serviceable and that the elements had everything specified in the element SOP and the items required for the specific mission.                      b. Ensured that the element had adequate resupply ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines.                      c. Conducted a communications check.                      d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that the weapons were test fired.                      e. Questioned personnel to ensure that they understood their task and purpose and that of the element's headquarters.                      f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</p> <p>*10. The leaders of the element conduct at least one type of rehearsal according to FM 101-5.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-193-3071 052-195-4065	DETERMINE METHOD OF BRIDGE ATTACK CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-113-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP	05-3-0904.05-R01A	ESTABLISH JOBSITE SECURITY
	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION
ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP	07-3-4129.05-T01A	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers, regular or irregular elements, in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location(s). 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** CONDUCT AMBUSH (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT ATTACK (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENT:** THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PLAN AND CONTROL INDIRECT FIRE (05-3-1239)  
(FM 6-30)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in support of a maneuver task force (TF) and receives a mobility or countermobility mission. Indirect fire is available through the maneuver TF. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader prepares a target list and calls for indirect fire to suppress or destroy the enemy. The platoon leader adjusts fire within two minutes.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader analyzes the assigned mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance from the unit's equipment to identify mobility or countermobility mission locations.</li> <li>b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance with the supported unit commander and the fire-support team (FIST).</li> <li>c. Identified mission locations and indirect-fire targets (8-digit grid coordinates).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader coordinates with the FIST.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested survey teams through the TF fire-support officer (FSO) to survey mission locations.</li> <li>b. Assigned target numbers for each mobility or countermobility mission location to facilitate indirect-fire missions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader coordinates with the FSO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the target numbers were listed on the TF target list.</li> <li>b. Planned the employment of artillery-delivered scatterable minefields as follows:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Plotted the proposed minefield centerline and the right and left boundaries with 8-digit grid coordinates.</li> <li>(2) Selected the mines: remote antiarmor mine (RAAM) for armored vehicles or area denial artillery munition (ADAM) for dismounted troops.</li> <li>(3) Selected the minefield density for: (a) Harassment. RAAM - 0.001 ADAM - 0.005 (b) Minefields covered by heavy direct fire. RAAM - 0.002 ADAM - 0.001 (c) Minefields covered by light direct fire. RAAM - 0.004 / ADAM - 0.002</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader calls for and controls indirect fire through the fire-direction center (FDC).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the method of target location as follows:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Polar plot. The observer's location is known by the FDC.</li> <li>(2) Grid coordinates. The observer's location is not known by the FDC and the target can be located by the observer to within 100 meters on a map.</li> <li>(3) Shift from a known point. One or more easily identifiable points are known to both the observer and FDC.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Transmitted a fire-mission request through the FDC in three parts as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observer identification and warning order.</li> <li>(2) Target location.</li> <li>(3) Description of the target, method of engagement, method of fire and control, and adjustment procedures based on the method of target location.</li> </ul> 5. The platoon uses indirect fire until the enemy is suppressed or destroyed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	01-2250.10-1002	Advise Supported Units on Engineer Capabilities and Employment
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3001	Order Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) terrain products
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
STP 21-24-SMCT	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION (08-2-0303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51) (FM 22-9)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has performed its combat mission on a continuous or near continuous basis over a prolonged period of time. The unit commander directs that battlefield-stress management procedures be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Cross-training, task-rotation, stress-management, sleep-discipline, and soldier-information measures are implemented to increase soldier combat capability. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The command group and staff keep soldiers informed of the combat situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Ensured soldiers have an accurate assessment of both friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Informed soldiers of leader intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Quelled and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed soldiers of religious support availability.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The command group and staff implement the unit sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided safe and secure areas (away from vehicles and other activities) for sleep.</li> <li>b. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest.</li> <li>c. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>d. Adjusted the sleep plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The command group implements task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross training on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Planned rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Adjusted task rotation or restructuring plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The command group and staff implement stress-coping and management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured units implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>b. Directed soldier relaxation techniques prior to deployment.</li> <li>c. Reintegrated soldiers into the unit who have been returned to duty, stressed, or fatigued by battle.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The command group and staff implement treatment techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mildly or seriously stressed soldiers or those with battle fatigue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to simple tasks. c. Encouraged leaders to be supportive of soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue who showed no signs of improvement to unit trains or medical facilities. e. Referred soldiers who have serious signs of stress or battle fatigue for medical evaluation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security (TSEC)/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57).</li> <li>b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15.</li> <li>c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI and/or the SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation).</li> <li>e. Kept the length (not more than 20 seconds per transmission) and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>f. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations.</li> <li>g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>i. Adhered to net discipline.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-II-MQS	01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers
	01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System
STP 21-I-MQS	01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers
	01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE CHANNEL, GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINGGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET (11-5-1102.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and has extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio-net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and/or manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p>WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that the preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the primary and the alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. The net members perform premission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hopset using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs premission checks for SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the TSK and the hopset using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Loaded the hopset using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</li> <li>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>f. Loaded the CUE frequency.</li> <li>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the CUE frequency as required.</li> <li>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> </ul> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</li> <li>b. Issued the electronic counter-countermeasures [ECCM] remote fill (ERF) instructions and sent the ERF.</li> <li>c. Set the channel switch to the hopset channel and issued the net call.</li> <li>d. Opened the net.</li> <li>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called missing net members.</li> <li>f. Repeated the cold start.</li> <li>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> </ul> <p>6. The net members enter the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</li> <li>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hopset channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> <li>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> <li>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hopset channel.</li> <li>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The net members perform the late net entry (LNE), CUE, and ERF method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed permission checks for a FH cold-start.</li> <li>b. Loaded the CUE frequency according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>c. Initiated the CUE call.</li> <li>d. Reported into the net.</li> <li>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</li> </ul> <p>8. The net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</li> <li>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>e. Operated on a random schedule.</li> <li>f. Adhered to net discipline.</li> </ul> <p>9. The team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the receiver/transmitter's (RT) signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</li> </ul> <p>10. The team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.</li> <li>c. Reduced the transmission speed.</li> <li>d. Increased the transmitter power.</li> <li>e. Relocated the antenna.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States Message Text Format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. The team members extend the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.</li> <li>b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.</li> <li>c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</li> </ul> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.</li> <li>b. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio "C."</li> <li>d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and CUE frequencies in radio "D."</li> <li>e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>f. Loaded the hopset and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).</li> <li>g. Cue'd the LNE using radio "D."</li> <li>h. Stored the ERF into both radios.</li> <li>i. Changed radio "D" to RTS MAN and CUE frequencies and TRS net ID.</li> <li>j. Set the FCTN switches of radios "C" and "D" to retransmit (RXMT).</li> </ul> <p>13. The team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hopset channel, or initiated a Cue call on the NCI Cue channel as required.</li> <li>b. Switched to NRI "MAN" channel.</li> <li>c. Established communications on the NRI hopset channel.</li> <li>d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</li> </ul> <p>14. The team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS, as required.</li> <li>b. Performed fault isolation, as required.</li> <li>c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.</li> <li>e. Completed all of the necessary entries in the maintenance record.</li> <li>f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</li> </ul> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the net and issued close-down instructions.</li> <li>b. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.</li> <li>c. Acknowledged the net members.</li> <li>d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
No STP and No MOS	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; level I threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. A tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQs element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated subordinate element personnel information.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared hasty personnel status report (PSR) strength reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQs element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added soldiers' names to battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, Casualty Feeder Reports (Department of the Army [DA] Form 1156), and Witness Statements (DA Form 1155) to supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander performs strength management functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> <li>b. Verified combat-critical personnel requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed strength management reports.</li> <li>d. Spot-checked strength information processing.</li> <li>e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** MAINTAIN TROOP MORALE AND COMBAT CAPABILITY (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
(FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
(AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 22-9)  
(UCMJ)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation order (OPORD), and fragmentary order (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Told the soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Quelled and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task-rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and non-demanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques prior to deployment.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a "buddy system" to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</p> <p>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit.</p> <p>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques.</p> <p>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle-fatigue cases.</p> <p>b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks.</p> <p>c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior of soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</p> <p>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</p> <p>e. Referred for medical evaluation or care, those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating.</p> <p>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.</p> <p>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</p> <p>b. Provided hot rations.</p> <p>c. Coordinated postal support.</p> <p>d. Coordinated combat payments.</p> <p>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</p> <p>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</p> <p>g. Coordinated legal support.</p> <p>h. Advised higher headquarters on unit MWR status.</p> <p>* 7. Leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.</p> <p>a. Monitored soldiers' fitness.</p> <p>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</p> <p>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</p> <p>d. Corrected problem areas.</p> <p>e. Briefed the commander on soldiers' fitness status.</p> <p>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).</p> <p>a. Evaluated evidence and determined appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</p> <p>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</p> <p>c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <p>a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness.</p> <p>b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</p> <p>c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition.</p> <p>d. Initiated administrative separations.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
MOS O COM 3 No STP and No MOS	01-9080.10-3001	Administer Military Justice at Company Level
	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
MOS O COM 3	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
	S3-0150.00-1002	Process Administrative Discharges
	S3-9001.18-0002	Minimize Combat Stress

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** MAINTAIN PLATOON STRENGTH (12-3-0001.05-T01A)  
(FM 12-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. A lull in the battle has occurred. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A personnel status report which accounts for all platoon personnel is provided daily or as required. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The squad members take immediate action.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers.</li> <li>b. Requested medical aid, as needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The squad leaders report the personnel status of the squad.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel.</li> <li>b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 for killed or wounded soldiers (body under United States (US) control).</li> <li>c. Prepared DA Form 1155 for captured or missing soldiers (body not under US control).</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded the situation report (SITREP) and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Directed cross leveling to fill critical-position openings caused by casualties.</li> <li>c. Consolidated squad personnel reports.</li> <li>d. Collected casualty feeder reports and witness statements (DA Forms 1155 and 1156).</li> <li>e. Updated the battle roster and the platoon strength accountability system.</li> <li>f. Determined critical replacement requirements.</li> <li>g. Prepared the strength report.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site/platoon orientation.</li> <li>b. Entered the names of soldiers onto the platoon accountability system/battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected soldiers for combat critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat-critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>e. Implemented the buddy system.</li> <li>f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reports the personnel status.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156.</li> <li>b. Transmitted the strength report and other requested personnel information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	052-195-4065	CONDUCT ENGINEER TACTICAL PLANNING
	052-218-3002	Maintain Engineer situational awareness using FBCB2
	052-218-3003	Conduct digital troop leader procedures
	052-218-4011	Obtain combat service support
	052-218-4013	Maintain engineer situational awareness using ABCS
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. Performance-oriented evaluations are conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing evaluations. Using units may modify this evaluation, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation which involves the total unit and employs realistic opposing forces (OPFOR) and the use of the Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES). At the end of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to measure the unit's capabilities accurately. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the missions as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame	
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Prestart time		
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures			
3	Issue Battalion Road-March Order	2 hours	Day 1	0200 hours
4	Conduct Tactical Road March	5 hours		0400 hours
5	Occupy Assembly Area	3 hours		0900 hours
	<u>Module 1</u>			
6	Receive Warning Order	2 hours		1200 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)			
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations			
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations			
10	Conduct Administrative Operations			
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations			
	<u>Module 2</u>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations		Day 2	1400 hours
13	Receive Warning Order			
14	Support Combat Operations (Counter-mobility)			
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operation			
16	Move to After-Action Review (AAR) Site and Conduct AAR			
17	End of Exercise (ENDEX)			
			Total Time:	12 hours

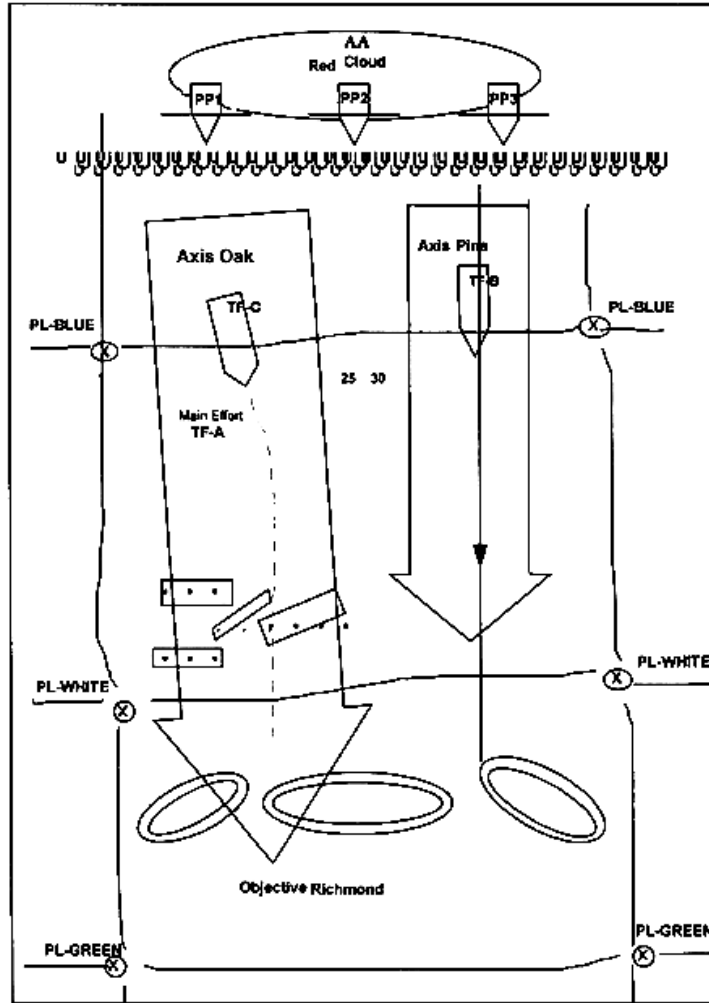


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration







6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters (HQ) must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Requirements**

<b>CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (1) (Refer to the note below.)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the field training exercise (FTX).</b>			

6-4. Selecting and Training Os/Cs. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting Os/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team should be used to perform an external evaluation of the battalion. The team should be made up of the following personnel:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) O/C.

b. A thorough knowledge of the battalion's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine is required by the Os/Cs. They must understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. Os/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing Os/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes--

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master-events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The battalion mission-essential task list (METL) and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) mission training plan (MTP).
- (3) The O/C team composition and the general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master-events list items that are their responsibility. This includes--
  - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the Os/Cs folders.
  - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
  - (d) Safety procedures.
  - (e) Evaluation data-collection operation plan (OPLAN) and procedures.
  - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, including war-gaming all items on the master-events list in order of their occurrence, and a review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the Os/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the battalion's AAR, and conducts specific evaluation-team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training OPFOR. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the battalion is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the battalion's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes--

- (1) Threat tactics and rules for engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements which are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the battalion.

b. The HQ two echelons above the battalion being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer battalion to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs which correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performances of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit's overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit's overall final rating. The following reports can be used to collect the information:

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel- and equipment-loss report (Figure 6-6). This report records information concerning battalion personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. Unit Designation:				Date:		
2. Unit Leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit Strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment Shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
O/C Signature:						

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
Exercise Number and Description:						
Date/Time Exercise Started:						
Date/Time Exercise Ended:						
1. Weather Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. Ground Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. Light Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Day	Night					
Moon phase	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
4. Terrain: (Circle appropriate description.)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
5. Remarks:						

**Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet**



b. Key steps in the AAR process are--

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario which is developed subsequently. Qualified Os/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the HQ engineer battalion performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR sites selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable Os/Cs and battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR's purpose, the establishment of the AAR's ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. Guidelines for a successful AAR include--

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner that ensures that the participants discuss the lessons openly.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among Os/Cs and battalion personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events which were not directly related to the major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR's end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE:** Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circular (TC) 25-6, TC 25-20, and Field Manual (FM) 25-101.



**APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)**

For use of the OPORD refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>
<p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. He being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) indicate that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of phase line (PL) Green.</p> <p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p> <p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p> <p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery (FA), is in direct support.</p> <p>2. MISSION. The task force (TF) conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of the Operation: See overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p> <p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs assembly area (AA) Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy's main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemies combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p> <p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p> <p>(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical choke points and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.</p> <p>b. Subunit Missions (as required).</p> <p>c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support hasty defense on order.</p> <p>d. Coordinating Instructions.</p> <p>(1) Report all enemy contact.</p>

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

**Figure A-1. OPORD**

- (3) Report crossing of the PLs.
- (4) Additional information, as required.
- 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per brigade standing operating procedure (SOP).
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operating instructions (SOI).
    - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

**Figure A-1. OPORD (continued)**



**APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)****Table B-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

<b>US Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals Metric Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds



## GLOSSARY

### **Section I** **Abbreviations**

<b>SIDPERS</b>	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
<b>1SG</b>	first sergeant
<b>AA</b>	antiaircraft; assembly area; avenue of approach
<b>ACE</b>	armored combat earthmover; American Council on Education
<b>ADA</b>	air-defense artillery
<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AP</b>	antipersonnel
<b>APC</b>	armored personnel carrier
<b>APOBS</b>	antipersonnel obstacle breaching system trainer
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation; Army Reserve
<b>AT</b>	antitank
<b>AVLB</b>	armored vehicle-launched bridge
<b>BOM</b>	bill of materials
<b>BP</b>	boast pump; battle position
<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>C4</b>	composition C4
<b>CAS</b>	close air support; combat air support
<b>CBR</b>	chemical, biological, and radiological; California bearing ratio
<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CE</b>	communications-electronics; compactive effort
<b>CH</b>	chaplains; combat heavy; cargo helicopter
<b>CO</b>	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company; commander
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>CP</b>	command post; checkpoint
<b>CPR</b>	cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation

<b>CS</b>	combat support; O-chlorobenzyl-malononitrile
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DENTAC</b>	dental activity
<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DRS</b>	direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
<b>DZ</b>	drop zone
<b>EBA</b>	engineer-battlefield assessment
<b>ECCM</b>	electronic counter-countermeasures
<b>EEFI</b>	essential elements of friendly information
<b>EM</b>	engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member
<b>EOD</b>	explosive ordnance disposal
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FC</b>	field circular
<b>FDC</b>	fire-direction center
<b>FIST</b>	fire-support team
<b>FLAGS</b>	favorable personnel actions
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulated
<b>FO</b>	forward observer; forward observation; fire officer; forward officer; finance officer; field order
<b>FOD</b>	foreign-object damage
<b>FPF</b>	final protection fires
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FRP</b>	fiberglass reinforced with polyurethane; fiber-reinforced plastic
<b>FS</b>	foresight; fire support



<b>G1</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)
<b>GSR</b>	ground surveillance radar
<b>HE</b>	high explosive
<b>HEAT</b>	high-explosive antitank
<b>HEMMS</b>	hand-emplaced minefield marking set
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HTF</b>	how to fight
<b>IAW</b>	in accordance with
<b>ID</b>	identification
<b>IEW</b>	intelligence and electronic warfare
<b>IOE</b>	irregular outer edge
<b>IPB</b>	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
<b>IR</b>	infrared; intelligence requirements
<b>LAW</b>	light antitank weapon
<b>LBE</b>	load-bearing equipment
<b>LCE</b>	load-carrying equipment
<b>LOC</b>	lines of communication (logistic routes)
<b>LP</b>	lesson plan; listening post; low pressure
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>M.</b>	meter(s)
<b>MARKS</b>	Modern Army Record Keeping System
<b>MEDDAC</b>	medical department activity
<b>MICLIC</b>	mine-clearing line charge
<b>MIJI</b>	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
<b>MLC</b>	military load classification; military load class
<b>MOPMS</b>	Modular-Pack Mine System
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protection posture
<b>MORTREP</b>	mortar bombing report

<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty; minimal operational strip
<b>MOUT</b>	military operations on urbanized terrain
<b>MP</b>	military police
<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standards
<b>MSR</b>	main supply route; missile site radar
<b>MWR</b>	morale, welfare, and recreation
<b>NAI</b>	named area(s) of interest
<b>NATO</b>	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, chemical
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NCOIC</b>	noncommissioned officer in charge
<b>NCS</b>	net-control station
<b>NG</b>	National Guard
<b>NRI</b>	net radio interface
<b>NSN</b>	nonstandard number; national stock number
<b>NVD</b>	night-vision device
<b>OCOKA</b>	observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
<b>OEG</b>	operational-exposure guidance
<b>OIC</b>	officer in charge
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing forces
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security
<b>ORP</b>	objective rally point
<b>PAC</b>	Personnel and Administration Center
<b>PCC</b>	precombat check
<b>PCI</b>	photo-coverage indexes; precombat inspection

<b>PDDE</b>	power-driven decontamination equipment
<b>PDF</b>	principle direction of fire
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PL</b>	phase line; preservative lubricant
<b>PLT</b>	platoon
<b>PM</b>	provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive-maintenance checks and services
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POM</b>	preparation for oversea movement; Program Objective Memorandum
<b>POS/NAV</b>	position/navigation
<b>POV</b>	privately owned vehicle
<b>PSC</b>	Personnel Service Company
<b>PSG</b>	platoon sergeant
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel staff noncommissioned officer
<b>PT</b>	physical training; point of tangency
<b>QC</b>	quality control
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>RATT</b>	radio teletypewriter
<b>recon</b>	reconnaissance
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RP</b>	release point; red phosphorous; rear phase; reference point; rally point
<b>S1</b>	Adjutant (US Army)
<b>S2</b>	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
<b>S3</b>	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
<b>S4</b>	Supply Officer (US Army)
<b>SA</b>	semiannually; situational awareness
<b>SALUTE</b>	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

<b>SATRAN</b>	satellite transmission
<b>SAW</b>	squad automatic weapon
<b>SHORAD</b>	shore-range air defense
<b>SITREP</b>	situation report
<b>SJA</b>	Staff Judge Advocate
<b>SM</b>	soldier's manual
<b>SMCT</b>	soldier's manual of common tasks
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedure
<b>SP</b>	start point
<b>SPOTREP</b>	spot report
<b>SSI</b>	signal supplemental instructions
<b>SSN</b>	social security number
<b>STANAG</b>	Standardization Agreement
<b>STB</b>	super tropical bleach
<b>STP</b>	soldier's training publication
<b>STRIKEWARN</b>	strike warning
<b>TACCS</b>	Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System
<b>TAMMS</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System
<b>TF</b>	task force
<b>TG</b>	trainer's guide
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TMDE</b>	Test Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment
<b>TNT</b>	trinitrotoluene
<b>TO</b>	theater of operations
<b>TOE</b>	table(s) of organization and equipment
<b>TR</b>	TRADOC Regulation
<b>TRP</b>	target reference point; troop

<b>TRTS</b>	tactical records traffic system
<b>TSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>US</b>	United States
<b>UXO</b>	unexploded ordnance
<b>WO</b>	warrant officer; warning order
<b>WP</b>	white phosphorus
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

**Section II**  
**Terms**

**Class IV**

Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

**Class V**

Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.



## REFERENCES

### Army Regulations

AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. (This item is included on EM 0001) 20 October 1994.
AR 600-8-10	Leaves and Passes. 1 July 1994.
AR 600-8-11	Reassignment. 1 October 1990.
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.
AR 600-85	Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1) (This item is included on EM 0001). 3 November 1986.
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.

### Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 25-30	Consolidated Index of Army Publications and Blank Forms. 1 July 2000.
DA PAM 27-7	Military Justice Handbook - Guide for Summary Court-Martial Trial Procedure. 15 April 1985.
DA PAM 600-8-1	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Battalion S1 Level Procedures (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1 - 2) (This item is included on EM 0001). 1 August 1986. 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures. 1 August 1986.
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 August 1994. 1 August 1994
DA PAM 750-1	Leader's Unit Level Maintenance Handbook. (This item is included on EM 0001) 15 February 1994.

### Department of Defense Publications

DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993.
------------------	---------------------------------------

### Field Manuals

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993.
FM 101-31-1	Staff Officers' Field Manual for Nuclear Weapons Employment Doctrine and Procedures. 6 January 1986.
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992.
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.
FM 11-41	Signal Support: Echelons Corps and Below (ECB). 18 December 1991.

FM 11-43 The Signal Leader's Guide. 12 June 1995.  
FM 11-50 Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy & Light). 4 April 1991.  
FM 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994  
FM 17-95 Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996.  
FM 19-30 Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.  
FM 19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.  
FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.  
FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.  
FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998  
FM 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.  
FM 21-10-1 Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.  
FM 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988  
FM 21-20 Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.  
FM 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.  
FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984  
FM 22-9 Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.  
FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990.  
FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.  
FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991  
FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.  
FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990  
FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990  
FM 25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988.  
FM 25-101 Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.  
FM 3-100 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.  
FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.  
FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.  
FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.  
FM 34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.  
FM 34-10-2 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare (IEW) Equipment Handbook. 13 July 1993.  
FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994.  
FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994.  
FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.  
FM 34-5 (S) Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994.  
FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.  
FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.  
FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.  
FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.  
FM 5-100 Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.  
FM 5-100-15 Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995.  
FM 5-102 Countermobility. 14 March 1985  
FM 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985.



FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.  
 FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998  
 FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990.  
 FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999.  
 FM 5-410 Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992.  
 FM 5-430-00-1 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.  
 FM 5-430-00-2 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.  
 FM 5-480 Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990.  
 FM 55-12 Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft. 10 November 1989.  
 FM 55-20 Army Rail Transport Units and Operations. 1 June 2000.  
 FM 55-30 Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997  
 FM 55-312 Military Convoy Operations In the Continental United States. 3 April 1991.  
 FM 55-65 Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995.  
 FM 5-71-100 Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993.  
 FM 5-71-2 Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.  
 FM 5-71-3 Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995.  
 FM 57-38 Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.  
 FM 7-10 The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.  
 FM 71-1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998  
 FM 71-100 Division Operations. 28 August 1996.  
 FM 7-7 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.  
 FM 7-8 Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.  
 FM 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.  
 FM 8-230 Medical Specialist. 24 August 1984.  
 FM 8-285 Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.  
 FM 8-55 Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.  
 FM 90-13 River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998  
 FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994  
 FM 9-43-2 Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair (FMFRP 4-34; to 36-1-181). 3 October 1995.

### Graphic Training Aids

GTA 21-3-4 Battle Fatigue, Normal Common Signs, What to do for Self and Buddy. 2 June 1986.  
 GTA 21-3-5 Battle Fatigue, "More Serious Signs", Leader Actions. 3 October 1983.  
 GTA 21-3-6 Battle Fatigue, Company Leader Actions and Prevention. 1 June 1994.  
 GTA 5-2-14 How to Order a Map. 4 January 1984.

### Other Product Types

SF 344 Multiuse Standard Requisitioning/Issue System Document. January 1972.  
 STP 2I-1-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1990.  
 STP 44-14II-MQS Military Qualification Standards II, Air Defense Artillery (14) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 19 June 1991.  
 TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990.

### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 10-92ABDII-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II, Quartermaster Corps, Quartermaster General (92A), Supply and Materiel Management (92B), and Aerial Delivery and Materiel (92D) Company Grade Officers Manual. 16 September 1991.
STP 10-92Y1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 1. 23 February 1994.
STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Unit Supply Specialist, MOS 92Y Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4. 23 February 1994.
STP 10-94B25-SM-TG	Soldiers Manual and Trainers Guide for MOS 94B, Food Service Specialist Skill Levels 2/3/4/5. 18 March 1993.
STP 11-31C13-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 31C, Radio Operator-Maintained Skill Levels 1/2/3. 29 August 1997.
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Level 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990.
STP 3-54B1-SM	Soldiers Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist. 16 June 1995.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
STP 3-74II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II, Chemical Branch (74) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 29 March 1991.
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. To be published within six months.
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. To be published within six months.
STP 5-62J12-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 62J, General Construction Equipment Operator Skill Levels 1/2. 29 September 1994.
STP 5-81Q1-SM	Soldier's Manual: 81Q, Terrain Analyst (Skill Level 1). 20 November 1985.
STP 8-91B15-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5 and Trainer's Guide for MOS 91B, Medical Specialist. 3 October 1995.

### **Technical Bulletins**

TB 750-25	Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair Support (C&RS) Program. 1 March 1997.
-----------	--

### **Technical Manuals**

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.

### **Training Circulars**

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992.
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

**Army Regulations**

- AR 600-8-14 Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998.
- AR 600-8-8 The Total Army Sponsorship Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 July 1993.
- AR 638-30 Graves Registration Organization and Functions in Support of Major Military Operations. 1 September 1980.

**Army Training and Evaluation Program**

- ARTEP 5-145-DRILL Engineer Drills. 22 October 1990

**Field Manuals**

- FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
- FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.
- FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.
- FM 10-64 MORTUARY AFFAIRS OPERATIONS 16 February 1999
- FM 10-67-1 Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations 2 April 1998
- FM 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
- FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
- FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.
- FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998
- FM 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.
- FM 21-10-1 Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.
- FM 21-16 Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994.
- FM 22-51 LEADERS' MANUAL FOR COMBAT STRESS CONTROL 29 September 1994
- FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
- FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
- FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.
- FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
- FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990
- FM 25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988.
- FM 3-11 Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996.
- FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.
- FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
- FM 3-34.230 Topographic Operations. 3 August 2000.
- FM 34-45 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000.
- FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.
- FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.
- FM 44-64 SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997.
- FM 44-8 Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.
- FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.
- FM 5-10 Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995.
- FM 5-102 Countermobility. 14 March 1985
- FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.

FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999.
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000.
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 21 February 1997.

### **Other Product Types**

UCMJ Uniform Code of Military Justice.

### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 19-95B1-SM Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.

### **Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

### **Army Regulations**

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997.
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.
AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program. 1 January 1985.
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988.
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989.
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.

**Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 1155 Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966  
 DA FORM 1156 Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966  
 DA FORM 1355 Minefield Record. 1 March 1987  
 DA FORM 1355-1-R Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record (LRA). October 1997.

**Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 738-750 Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 August 1994.  
 1 August 1994

**Field Manuals**

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.  
 FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.  
 FM 101-5-1 Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997  
 FM 10-23 Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.  
 FM 1-100 Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.  
 FM 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994  
 FM 17-95 Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996.  
 FM 19-30 Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.  
 FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.  
 FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998  
 FM 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988  
 FM 21-16 Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994.  
 FM 21-20 Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.  
 FM 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.  
 FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984  
 FM 22-9 Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.  
 FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990.  
 FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.  
 FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991  
 FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.  
 FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990  
 FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990  
 FM 3-100 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.  
 FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.  
 FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000  
 FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.  
 FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.  
 FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.  
 FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.  
 FM 5-10 Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995.  
 FM 5-100 Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.  
 FM 5-102 Countermobility. 14 March 1985  
 FM 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985.

FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986.
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999.
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 6-30	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire. 16 July 1991.
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993.
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.
FM 90-10-1	An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas. 12 May 1993.
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operators. 16 March 1987.
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

#### **Other Product Types**

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. May 1996.
STANAG 2003	Patrol Reports. 16 January 1989.
STANAG 2017	Orders to the Demolition Guard Commander and Demolition Firing Party Commander (Nonnuclear). 10 July 1981 (with amendments).
STANAG 2123	Obstacle Folder. 30 November 1984 (with amendments).

#### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Level 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. To be published within six months.
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. To be published within six months.

**Technical Manuals**

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990.
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972.
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969.
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972.
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970.
TM 9-1300-214	Military Explosives. 20 September 1984.
TM 9-1375-213-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Demolition Materials. 30 March 1973.
TM 9-2350-276-BD	Operator's, Organizational, Direct Support and General Support Maintenance Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Combat Vehicles. 10 February 1984.

**Training Circulars**

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.
TC 5-210	Military Float Bridging Equipment. 27 December 1988

**Field Manuals**

FM 22-51	LEADERS' MANUAL FOR COMBAT STRESS CONTROL 29 September 1994
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-34.230	Topographic Operations. 3 August 2000.
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000.
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000.
FM 6-30	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire. 16 July 1991.
FM 90-10-1 (HTF)	An Infantryman's Guide to Urban Combat (How to Fight). 30 September 1982.
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 21 February 1997.

**Technical Manuals**

TM 9-1300-214	Military Explosives. 20 September 1984.
TM 9-2350-276-BD	Operator's, Organizational, Direct Support and General Support Maintenance Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Combat Vehicles. 10 February 1984.

ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP

**Training Circulars**

TC 5-210

Military Float Bridging Equipment. 27 December 1988



**QUESTIONNAIRE**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-6600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

- a. Active Component
- b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

\_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse.
- b. Has made training better.
- c. Has had no affect on training.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

- a. More difficult.
- b. Easier.
- c. About the same.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? \_\_\_\_\_

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? \_\_\_\_\_

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? \_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES (STXs).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
- c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

- a. Have too many pages.
- b. Are hard to read and understand.
- c. Need more illustrations.
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- e. Need more information on leader training.
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- g. Need more information on support and resources.
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.



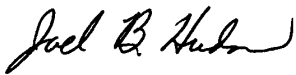


**ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP  
2 OCTOBER 2000**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0101701

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. EMO only.

**PIN: 078856-000**